

BIBLICAL

SEMINARY

THEOLOGIE  
CAMEROUN  
« Père, Rien que la Bible »

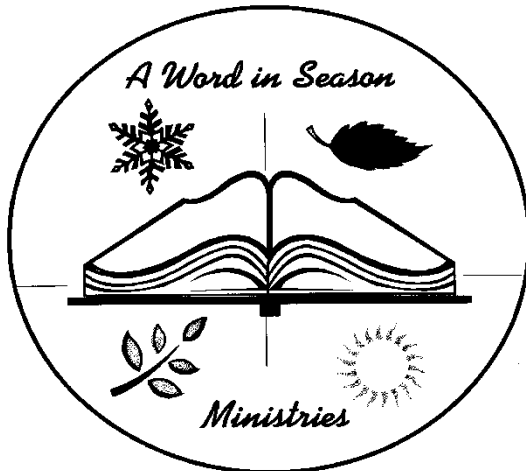
**Angelology,  
Satanology,  
Demonology**

**Cameroon Biblical Seminary  
Class Transcripts**

**Earl Cooper, Ph. D.**

# Angelology, Satanology, Demonology

Cameroon Biblical Seminary  
Class Transcripts



ὁ λόγος ἐν τῷ λαῷ ὁ λαός ἐν τῷ λόγῳ

**Dr. Earl Cooper**  
**1248 Healey Lk. Rd.**  
**Bracebridge, ON. P1L 1X3**  
**Web: [DiscipleshipMinistries.ca](http://DiscipleshipMinistries.ca)**

Copyright © 2020 by A Word in Season Ministries

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form or by any electronic or mechanical means, including information storage and retrieval systems, without permission in writing from the publisher, except by a reviewer who may quote brief passages in a review.

Published by: A Word in Season Ministries  
1248 Healey Lake Road  
Bracebridge, Ontario, Canada

## Table of Contents

<b>LECTURE 1</b> .....	<b>8</b>
<b>PREAMBLE</b> .....	<b>8</b>
<b>INTRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>12</b>
<b>I. THE EXISTENCE OF ANGELS</b> .....	<b>13</b>
A. JESUS BELIEVED IN ANGELS .....	13
B. PAUL BELIEVED IN ANGELS .....	14
<b>II. THE NATURE OF ANGELS</b> .....	<b>16</b>
A. THEY ARE CREATED BEINGS. ....	16
<b>LECTURE 2</b> .....	<b>19</b>
B. THEY ARE INNUMERABLE .....	22
C. THEY ARE SPIRIT BEINGS.....	23
D. THEY ARE BEINGS OF GREAT POWER.....	23
E. THEY ARE INTELLIGENT BEINGS .....	25
F. THEY ARE MASCULINE IN APPEARANCE .....	29
G. THEY ARE CELIBATE.....	29
H. THEY ARE ETERNAL.....	30
I. THEY ARE SUBORDINATE CREATURES. ....	31
<b>LECTURE 3</b> .....	<b>33</b>
<b>LECTURE 4</b> .....	<b>34</b>
<b>III. IDENTIFICATION OF ANGELS</b> .....	<b>35</b>
A. LUCIFER .....	35
B. MICHAEL THE ARCHANGEL .....	36
C. GABRIEL.....	36
D. CHERUBIM.....	37
E. SERAPHIM.....	37
F. ANGEL OF THE LORD.....	39
G. OTHER TERMS OF IDENTIFICATION .....	43
H. TWO GREAT DIVISIONS .....	45
<b>LECTURE 5</b> .....	<b>46</b>
<b>IV. ARE ANGELS REDEEMABLE?</b> .....	<b>51</b>
<b>LECTURE 6</b> .....	<b>62</b>
<b>V. THE MISSION OF ANGELS</b> .....	<b>64</b>
A. ANGELS MINISTER TO BELIEVERS .....	64
B. ANGELS PROTECT GOD’S PEOPLE.....	65
C. ANGELS GUIDE GOD’S PEOPLE .....	66
D. ANGELS EXECUTE GOD’S JUDGEMENT.....	66
E. ANGELS WILL ACCOMPANY CHRIST AT HIS COMING.....	66
F. ANGELS WILL TAKE BELIEVERS TO HEAVEN.....	67
G. ANGELS PROVIDE FOR GOD’S PEOPLE .....	67
H. ANGELS STRENGTHEN GOD’S PEOPLE.....	68
I. ANGELS ARE AGENTS IN ANSWERING PRAYER .....	68

<b>THE SONS OF GOD -- MEN OR ANGELS? .....</b>	<b>68</b>
<b>I. INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>68</b>
<b>II. WHY "SONS OF GOD" IN GENESIS 6:2 CANNOT REFER TO ANGELS .....</b>	<b>69</b>
A. THE CONTEXT REFERS TO THE GODLY LINE OF SETH AND THE UNGODLY LINE OF CAIN..	69
B. MOSES USES ONLY THE TERM "ANGEL" FOR THE SPIRIT BEINGS .....	70
C. GOD'S JUDGMENT IS DIRECTED AGAINST MEN AND NOT AGAINST ANGELS. ....	71
D. THE SIN THAT GOD IS AGAINST INVOLVES THE GODLY LINE TAKING WIVES FROM THE UNGODLY LINE.....	71
E. THE TERM, THE "SONS OF GOD" NEVER REFERS TO FALLEN ANGELS.....	73
F. THE TERM "SONS OF GOD" OR SOMETHING EQUIVALENT TO THAT, DOES APPLY TO GODLY MEN, NOT ANGELS.....	73
G. ANGELS ARE CREATED DIFFERENT FROM MAN .....	74
<b>LECTURE 7 .....</b>	<b>75</b>
H. THE PRESENCE OF THE NEPHILIM.....	75
I. JESUS AND THE DAYS OF NOAH. ....	76
J. THE "ANGELS" VIEW PARALLELS MYTHOLOGY.....	77
K. THE INTERPRETATION OF I PETER 3:18-21; 4:6.....	77
L. THE INTERPRETATION OF II PETER 2 .....	79
M. THE INTERPRETATION OF JUDE .....	81
N. WHERE DID THE ANGEL THEORY COME FROM? .....	83
<b>SATANOLOGY .....</b>	<b>85</b>
<b>INTRODUCTION.....</b>	<b>85</b>
<b>THE CAREER OF SATAN .....</b>	<b>87</b>
<b>I. SATAN'S CREATION, ORIGINAL ESTATE, AND FALL.....</b>	<b>87</b>
A. HE WAS A CREATED BEING.....	87
B. HE WAS AN EXALTED ANGEL.....	88
<b>II. SATAN'S 5IN .....</b>	<b>90</b>
A. THE 5 "I WILL'S" .....	90
B. WHY THE FALL? .....	92
C. AT THIS POINT LUCIFER FELL AND BECAME SATAN, THE ADVERSARY OF GOD. ....	92
<b>LECTURE 8 .....</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>III. SATAN ACCORDING TO THE OLD TESTAMENT .....</b>	<b>93</b>
A. HIS NAME WAS LUCIFER .....	93
B. HIS NAME IS SATAN .....	94
C. HE IS THE SERPENT.....	96
<b>IV. SATAN ACCORDING TO THE NEW TESTAMENT .....</b>	<b>96</b>
A. HE IS THE DEVIL - ACCUSER OR ADVERSARY .....	97
B. HE IS THE TEMPTER .....	97
C. HE IS BEELZEBUB - PRINCE OF THE DEMONS .....	97
D. HE IS THE ENEMY .....	97
E. HE IS THE EVIL (WICKED) ONE .....	97
F. HE IS BELIAL - PERTAINING TO WORTHLESSNESS .....	97
H. HE IS THE DECEIVER.....	97
I. HE IS THE FATHER OF LIES.....	97
J. HE IS A MURDERER.....	97
K. HE IS THE SINNER.....	97

<b>SUMMARY .....</b>	<b>97</b>
<b>SATAN'S EVIL CHARACTER .....</b>	<b>100</b>
<b>I. TWOFOLD WICKEDNESS .....</b>	<b>100</b>
A. AMBITIOUS PRIDE .....	100
B. UNTRUTH .....	101
C. THREE FORCES .....	104
<b>LECTURE 9 .....</b>	<b>106</b>
<b>II. SATAN S SINFULNESS .....</b>	<b>107</b>
<b>THE SATANIC COSMOS .....</b>	<b>111</b>
<b>I. SATAN'S AUTHORITY OVER THE COSMOS .....</b>	<b>112</b>
A. SATAN'S INFLUENCE.....	112
B. SATAN'S 5-FOLD POWER OVER CREATION EVIDENT IN JOB .....	116
C. SATAN'S DOMAIN EVIDENT IN THE TEMPTATIONS OF JESUS.....	118
<b>LECTURE 10 .....</b>	<b>121</b>
D. THE TESTIMONY OF CHRIST REGARDING SATAN'S AUTHORITY .....	122
E. THE TESTIMONY OF THE NEW TESTAMENT WRITERS REGARDING SATAN'S AUTHORITY.....	122
<b>II. THE COSMOS IS WHOLLY EVIL .....</b>	<b>123</b>
<b>III. SATAN'S UNDERTAKINGS IN THE COSMOS.....</b>	<b>125</b>
A. HE ACCUSES .....	125
B. HE RESISTS THE WORK OF GOD.....	125
C. HE STEALS AND TWISTS THE WORD OF GOD .....	126
D. HE HAS A DEEP HATRED FOR CHRISTIANS .....	126
E. HE WORKS WICKEDNESS THROUGH PEOPLE.....	126
F. HE WORKS THROUGH POSSESSIONS .....	127
G. HE USES LIES TO HIS ADVANTAGE .....	127
H. HE USES DISGUISES.....	127
I. HE IS THE MASTER OF TEMPTATION .....	130
J. HE RESISTS CONTINUALLY .....	130
K. HE IS AN INSTRUMENT OF CHASTISEMENT.....	130
<b>IV. THE END OF SATAN'S COSMOS.....</b>	<b>130</b>
<b>SATAN'S MOTIVE.....</b>	<b>132</b>
<b>SATAN'S METHODS .....</b>	<b>132</b>
<b>I. SATAN METHOD OF BEGUILING EVE.....</b>	<b>132</b>
1 SATAN DOUBT GOD'S WORD - " <i>HATH GOD SAID</i> " .....	133
2 SATAN DISTORT GOD'S WORD - " <i>EVERY TREE</i> " .....	133
3 SATAN DENY GOD'S WORD - " <i>YOU SHALL NOT DIE</i> " .....	133
<b>II. SATAN'S TACTICS OF DECEPTION.....</b>	<b>134</b>
<b>LECTURE 11 .....</b>	<b>136</b>
<b>III. SATAN'S TACTICS OF CORRUPTION.....</b>	<b>136</b>
<b>IV. SATAN'S TACTICS OF BONDAGE.....</b>	<b>137</b>
<b>SATAN JUDGED.....</b>	<b>139</b>
<b>I. SATAN JUDGED IN THE CROSS .....</b>	<b>139</b>
A. THE DEFEAT OF SATAN WAS PROPHESED .....	139
B. SATAN WILL OVERCOME BY CHRIST.....	140
C. THE DOMAIN OF SATAN'S INFLUENCE IS SPOILED BY THE CROSS.....	141
<b>II. THE EXECUTION OF SATAN'S JUDGMENTS.....</b>	<b>141</b>

A. THREE JUDGMENTS ALREADY PASSED BY VIRTUE OF SATAN’S FALL .....	141
B. THREE JUDGMENTS EXECUTED UPON SATAN .....	142
<b>SATAN’S LIMIT .....</b>	<b>150</b>
<b>LECTURE 12 .....</b>	<b>151</b>
<b>DEMONOLOGY .....</b>	<b>151</b>
<b>INTRODUCTION.....</b>	<b>151</b>
<b>SATAN’S SPIRIT LABOURERS.....</b>	<b>152</b>
<b>I. THEIR ORIGIN: CREATED BEINGS AT SOME TIME PAST.....</b>	<b>152</b>
<b>II. THEIR FALL .....</b>	<b>152</b>
<b>III. THEIR NUMBER .....</b>	<b>153</b>
<b>IV. THEIR WORK .....</b>	<b>153</b>
A. THEY POSSESS PEOPLE:.....	153
B. THEY PLAY AN ACTIVE PART IN ERROR. ....	157
<b>DEMONS AND CHRISTIANS.....</b>	<b>158</b>
<b>I. DISPENSATIONALISM AND DEMON EXPULSION .....</b>	<b>159</b>
A. THE NT AND CASTING OUT.....	159
B. JESUS OFFERING THE KINGDOM TO ISRAEL.....	160
C. DEMON EXPULSION AND SIGNS AND WONDERS .....	161
D. A BIBLICAL THEOLOGY OF SIGNS AND WONDERS.....	165
<b>LECTURE 13 .....</b>	<b>168</b>
<b>II. "DEMON POSSESSED" OR "DEMONIZED" .....</b>	<b>170</b>
A. CONFUSION OVER WORD MEANING.....	170
B. DEMON HABITATION: SPATIAL OR SPIRITUAL? .....	173
<b>III. CAN CHRISTIANS BE DEMON POSSESSED?.....</b>	<b>173</b>
A. THE CRIPPLED WOMAN BOUND BY SATAN. ....	173
B. THE CONTRIBUTIONS OF MATTHEW 12.....	176
C. OTHER PASSAGES OF SCRIPTURE TO BE CONSIDERED.....	180
<b>IV. DO BELIEVERS HAVE AUTHORITY OVER SATAN AND DEMONS? ....</b>	<b>182</b>
A. THE GREAT COMMISSION.....	182
B. THE BOOK OF EPHESIANS.....	184
<b>LECTURE 14 .....</b>	<b>188</b>
C. THE BOOK OF ROMANS .....	189
D. REBUKING SATAN AND HIS HOST.....	190
<b>V. WHAT ARE CHRISTIANS TO DO? .....</b>	<b>194</b>
A. CONCENTRATE ON EVANGELISM AND DISCIPLESHIP .....	194
B. FIGHT DEFENSIVELY, NOT OFFENSIVELY. ....	194
C. TALK TO GOD, NOT TO SATAN.....	196
D. REJECT THE UNBIBLICAL.....	197

## LECTURE 1

### Preamble

In North America Satan knows that he does not have to use many of his fellow demons to destroy people, he just uses materialism. But in Africa I see that the battle is truly against the spiritual hosts. This leads me to ask of my African students a very important question.

*Prof. Question: Please go to the back page of your notes and write this question out on the top space. The question is this: Do the dead influence the living?*

*Let me explain. By influence I am not talking about mean not is their good example in our memories. What I mean is, When individuals die do they go into a realm where they can influence with their own power, the lives of the living? Influence could mean directing people or protecting people in some way.*

*Do you understand the question? Do the dead influence the living? Write the question down and write your answer down beside it. The answer should be either yes or no, I don't want an explanation. Be truthful. I'm not going to ask your answer. I think it is important to you to be able to identify your own belief right now. I want to know what you believe, and I want you to write down what you believe. We will come back to this question at the end of our class to see if your opinion has changed or been confirmed.*

When we start the doctrine of Angels, Satan, and demons, we are talking about the spiritual world that I mentioned that we wrestle against, not flesh and blood. It is a very real world. We know this because the Bible tells us so.

In the modernist thinking era when I was growing up and going to school and university, the criteria to determine what is truth was science. So, what I was taught was that if you couldn't see it or in some way measure it, it didn't exist. I do not know your ages or the or the academic back-



ground of my African students; however, I do know that my children grew up in a different era with different thinking. Their world is called the “post-modern” era. Some of the axioms of post-modernism are completely different from when I was in school.

Post-modernist thinking acknowledges that there is a world that we cannot see. That’s a good thing. In the modernist thinking of my world, when I gave witness to Jesus Christ as the Son of God, they did not think there was a God or even a spirit-world. Science determined truth. But now with post modernism there is an acceptance of the things that we cannot see. Although that is good, there is a bigger problem with post-modernism.

In modernism, truth is absolute. Truth does not change! That’s good, that’s accurate. But modernism says we determine truth by science, and that’s not good. In post-modernism – and I think this has influenced Africa education – there is an acceptance of the spirit world which we cannot see; but post-modernism does not believe that truth is absolute. So, for Bruno, he has his truth, for Earl Cooper, I have my truth. If Pastor Bruno’s truth is that Buddha is the way of the religion world to understand the spirit world, that’s truth for him. The Muslim, the Hindu, the Christian, they all have their own truth.

That’s where we are in our modern day. That’s the people we are trying to reach now who’ve gone through the influence of the school system of today. I know that in Africa the school system that is paid for by the government is still influenced by Christianity. But it depends on the location. History shows us that the large city centres are usually the first centres where Christian education is lost, because these are the centres where universities are located. These schools have the greatest influence on future generations. So, wherever you are ministering you will come to the place where post-modernism will influence the people you are trying to reach. It will happen.

We are facing a society around the world where traditions and truth are mixed together so there is no distinction. For example, my mother is from Belfast, Ireland. They had their superstitions and traditional beliefs. My mother used to talk about leprechauns, the little people. They lived in the

bush. If you caught one, he would give you a pot of gold to let him go. They also had a tradition of the banshee. A banshee was the spirit being who would come to take your spirit/soul away so you could die. The banshee would descend with a spiritual coach and horses, to steal your soul at death. Before the banshee took your soul you would hear the cry of the banshee cry “eeeeee-eeee.”

When I was a little boy and heard a noise like that I was afraid. Now I want to tell you something that is very funny. When I married my wife, I didn't realize that at night she moaned, and her moan sounded just like the banshee. I remember when she would moan I would wake up in alarm! I knew there was no such thing as a banshee or leprechauns, but when I was a child and my mother would talk about these myths, I thought these things were true.

Every society every culture has its traditions and superstitions. In North America we have what we call the First Nations people. They were the people living in North America when the white men discovered it. There are still centres across America where the First Nations people live. The similarity between their traditional beliefs and African beliefs amazes me. They believe in a being that was a shape-changer or a person who was a shape-changer. He was a person who could change from being a man to being, for instance, a bear.

They also believed in what they called “dream-catchers.” That the dream world was a real world and you could somehow make that dream real in your life. I think dream catchers are used to protect sleeping people from bad dreams and nightmares. “When morning comes and the dream-catcher is exposed to light, the bad dreams dissolve and disappear.” Good dreams pass through them and comfort the person asleep.

Then there are small traditions or superstitions. In North America people carry a rabbit's foot for good luck. You can buy little rabbit feet with key chains. If a black cat walks across your path, it is bad luck. Now with post-modernism influencing the media, TV, and movies, there is a whole new set of traditions. The TV in America has influenced people's thinking even about angels. Some of the TV shows present people who become an-

gels when they die. In the movie industry there is a focus on vampires, people who drink blood to have eternal life.

So, in every culture there is tradition that is mixed with false understanding and false beliefs. It becomes difficult for people to understand what truth is. Bruno's truth is Bruno's truth; my truth is my truth. Therefore truth is not absolute in modern thinking. Rather truth is subjective and constantly changing according to modern (and I add "illogical") thinking.

I taught this class in Yaoundé probably 4 years ago. There were 26 students and when they were doing an assignment, I asked Dr. Simon how many cultures were represented, and he looked around and he said, "there are probably 10 different cultures in this room." So I learned it is good for us to have a discussion now to learn how your culture may be different from another student's culture.

*Prof. Question: Think of the culture you come from and see if you can identify any of the traditions or wrong beliefs that might strongly influence people in your culture. Do any of your cultures have a banshee?*

*Student Response: -We call them "terupama." When they find you, they take you hostage and if you are nice to them, they teach you. This is part of the Mancha culture in central Africa. -We don't have a leprechaun, but where I live we now believe Scriptures. -In my culture, when an owl goes "whoo-who," it is a bad spirit. When it happens you know someone will die. - In my culture a type of bird, when it sings, you will know there is death going to happen or already happened. -We have the idea that if any member of our family passes away, they have the power to come back and show you or lead you and protect you as well. -We also think that when you hear the owl, someone will die. It confirms this. -Because the people believe these things, they have to seek protection from the evil with priests who have fetish practises.*

*Prof. Response: What is the priest called?*

*Student Response: -Mallaboo/Maraboo or witch doctor. -Also they offer sacrifice to live in peace. The sacrifice is an animal. -In my culture, when*

*someone dies, we watch in the morning and put a flower to block evil from coming inside.*

*Prof. Response: When I came to teach in Africa, I took a course from the University of Nairobi on African traditions. It helped me grasp an understanding of the culture that is here. That's when I realized why the requests for this course. Because what we will discover in this course is what the spiritual world is. We are going to be looking at what the Bible says about the spiritual world and the beings that are in the spiritual world. If we believe that the Bible is the Word of God, and we believe that God is truth, that He never changes, He is the creator of all that exists; therefore, His Word is the source of all truth and that is all there is. We will be able to distinguish between what truth is and what tradition and false beliefs are. We are all influenced by our culture; we cannot help this.*

## **Introduction**

Angelic beings are mentioned 273 times in 34 books of the Bible. The natural human vision is not able to discern the presence of angels, but that fact does not impugn the truth that angels are about us on every hand. Milton has written by poetic fancy and not by inspiration: "Millions of spiritual creatures walk the earth Unseen, both when we wake and when we sleep" (cited by Strong, Systematic Theology, sixth edition, pg. 227). When the natural vision of the young man of 2 Kings 6 was augmented, he saw the mountain full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha: **2 Kings 6:17:** *And Elisha prayed, and said, "LORD, I pray, open his eyes that he may see." Then the LORD opened the eyes of the young man, and he saw. And behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire all around Elisha.*

One reason angels are rendered invisible to human sight may be that, if they were seen, they would be worshiped. Man, who is so prone to idolatry as to worship the works of his own hands, would hardly be able to resist the worship of angels were they before his eyes. The Apostle admonishes against the worshipping of angels: **Col. 2:18:** *Let no one cheat you of your reward, taking delight in false humility and worship of angels, intruding into those things which he has not seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind,*

And John testifies:

**Rev. 19:10:** *And I fell at his feet to worship him. But he said to me, "See that you do not do that! I am your fellow servant, and of your brethren who have the testimony of Jesus. Worship God! For the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy."*

We will learn what angels are and their characteristics and all these things. Schaeffer states it is an invisible world because if we saw the angels in all their splendour and glory as they live in the presence of God, we would worship them. Remember several times when angels came to speak to people, the people went to bow down and the angels said, "Don't, I'm only an angel."

### **I. The Existence of Angels**

Some deny the existence of spiritual beings because they are beyond sense perception. Liberals deny the existence of angels.

#### **A. Jesus Believed in Angels**

The existence of angels in the African culture is assumed. I have not met every African, but I have not met an African person who does not believe in spiritual beings. I do go to cultures where people believe there are no such things as spiritual beings. To prepare people to teach the Scriptures we talk about such things as: "What did Jesus teach about angels? Jesus spoke about angels:

**Matt. 18:10:** *Take heed that you do not despise one of these little ones, for I say to you that in heaven their angels always see the face of My Father who is in heaven.* The "little ones" here are children. It is interesting that Jesus says, "their angels will see the face of my Father." That would be an interesting paper right there: Do children have their own angels? What does "*their angels always see the face of My Father*" mean? Perhaps the Greek explains this.

What Jesus is saying is that God is so interested in children that He has assigned angels to them. The application for us is significant: Don't overlook children in your ministry. They are very important in the eyes of God.

**Mark 13:32:** *But of that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but only the Father.*

Do you know the context here? Christ is responding to the question the disciples asked during the Olivet discourse. He's talking about the day of

the Lord that will bring about the destruction of the earth at Christ's coming. Then they will see the Son of Man coming in the clouds. The disciples were people like you and I. Do we know the Lord is coming back? Yes, but the next question we ask is: "When will it happen?" Jesus said, not even the angels know that day. In these two references Jesus took the reality of angels for granted. He assumed people knew angels existed. Those texts and others indicate Jesus believed angels existed.

### B. Paul Believed in Angels

Let's talk about Paul. Remember Paul was taught by the great teacher of the day, Gamaliel. He was a scholar, not a fisherman. He had been taught the details of the Old Testament (OT) Scriptures. What does he say about angels?

**Col. 2:18:** *Let no one cheat you of your reward, taking delight in false humility and worship of angels, intruding into those things which he has not seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind,*

In this verse context Paul is referring to the work that is completed in Christ; verse 6 "*as you receive Christ, walk in Him.*" He goes on to explain the significance of Christ in their lives: verse 9: "*all that in him dwelt.*" Paul affirms the fact that every barrier between man and God is removed so they who were once dead in sin are now alive (vs. 13). In light of the fact believers are in Christ, he gives them confidence by saying "*don't let anyone judge you*" (vs. 16), "*don't let anyone cheat you... in false humility and worship of angels,*" (vs. 18).

Paul is referring to the individuals who worshipped angels and could influence them, and in influencing them, remove them from the reward they have in Christ. In saying this, Paul assumes they understand there is such a thing as angels because these people are worshipping angels, which is wrong. When Paul writes to the church in Colossae, he says don't let people who are proud of themselves, destroy the truth that you are in Christ and have all the fullness which that means. In this discussion, using these people as an example, Paul mentions their arrogance and their falsehood in worshipping angels. So we can conclude that he believed in angels

and they believed there were angels, although it was wrong to worship them.

**2 Thess. 1:7:** *and to give you who are troubled rest with us when the Lord Jesus is revealed from heaven with His mighty angels,*

Paul is now writing to the Thessalonians, a persecuted people. He mentions “the wonder of the righteousness with God who will bring trouble to those who are persecuting His church” (vs. 6). Not only will God bring trouble to the persecutors, this same God will give believers rest when He returns “*with His mighty angels.*”

Paul is giving information that when the Lord is coming with a host of angels. So obviously he believes in angels. For those who have computers, I will bring a disc you can copy onto your computer, the pre-study guide on angels. (The Angelology Study guide can be downloaded from: <http://www.discipleshipministries.ca/>. You can study it, copy it, use it in whatever way you wish.) The Bible says a lot about angels.

The Bible tells us we can look at creation and come to the conclusion there is God:

**Ps.19:1:** *The heavens declare the glory of God; And the firmament shows His handiwork.*

Although creation will reveal some information about the character of God; His power, His wisdom, etc., the purpose of creation is to say “there is a God, seek Me!” I believe that every time a person truly seeks the living God, God will reveal Himself to him or her through His Word. He will send a pastor to him or her, or a missionary, or another believer. Or, like one of our church members who was truly at the end of his own life; he had failed in business, he failed in his marriage, he was going to take his own life, God provided a Bible!

This man went to a park to end his life. While he was contemplating suicide, he prayed: “If there is a God, show yourself!” He looked down on the park bench where he sat. Someone had left a Bible there! He picked it up, and it opened up to John’s Gospel. He read the story of Jesus and accepted Jesus as his Saviour. That man became a faithful church member and servant of Christ.

## II. The Nature of Angels

Let's look at what the Bible teaches about the nature of angels.

A. They are created beings.

**Neh. 9:6:** *You alone are the LORD; You have made heaven, The heaven of heavens, with all their host, The earth and everything on it, The seas and all that is in them, And You preserve them all. The host of heaven worships You.*

Clearly, Nehemiah is stating his praise to God. He is the creator, Although Nehemiah doesn't use the word angel, he speaks of the "hosts of heaven." The passage here is embracing all of creation; earth and everything we can see, and heaven and everything we cannot see. The text refers to the physical and spiritual aspects of God's creation, indicating the existence of an unseen "host of heaven" created by God.

**Col. 1:16:** *For by Him all things were created that are in heaven and that are on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers. All things were created through Him and for Him.*

In this passage Paul is talking about everything that is created in heaven and earth, whether visible or invisible. Then he writes about the thrones and the principalities and powers behind the thrones. In these two verses, we are taught about something more than angels. This verse shares that everything that exists was created by God. We are using these verses to show the angels are part of creation. The emphasis of the passage is that everything that exists was God created.

One verse tells when this takes place:

**Ex. 20:11:** *For in six days the LORD made the heavens and the earth, the sea, and all that is in them, and rested the seventh day. Therefore the LORD blessed the Sabbath day and hallowed it.*

There is an interesting connection between this verse and the previous verses we looked at. When the Bible speaks of the heavens as plural, it includes the spirit world we cannot see which are mentioned in the other texts. There have been in the past many different concepts about the order of creation.



**Job 38:5-7:** *Who determined its measurements? Surely you know! Or who stretched the line upon it? To what were its foundations fastened? Or who laid its cornerstone, When the morning stars sang together, And all the sons of God shouted for joy?*

Some theologians use this text to prove that angels existed before creation because they were present to “shout for joy” at creation’s beginning. However, that is not what this text implies. The context refers to when God “laid the foundations of the earth” (Job 1:4). Genesis 1 clearly indicates that the universe was first created “*without form, and void,*” then Scripture relates creation’s completion with the earth: its light, the separation from water, the distinction of heaven and earth, on the first day. I suggest that because man cannot see the abode of God and His host, He created angels also on day one but before working on what was all the matter “*without form and void.*” And after their creation, He formed the visible universe as a testimony of His supreme power and unique character, resulting in the rightful worship of and loyalty to Him.

“The sons of God” here must necessarily be the angels (see Ch. 1:6; 2:1), since there were no men as yet in existence. They too joined in the chorus of sympathy and admiration, perhaps lifting up their voices (Rev. 5:11, 12), perhaps their hearts only, praising the Creator, who had done such marvelous things.<sup>1</sup>

One of the most popular Bibles was the Schofield Bible. This was the King James Version with study notes, one of the first printed. Schofield did his work on the Bible during the modernist era. How did the modernist thinker find truth? I shared this at the beginning of the class. Modernists held to the premise that “Science determined truth.” In Schofield’s day, Science proved the earth was billions of years old. With this premise Schofield had a problem. In Matthew and Luke you find the genealogies all the way back to Adam, 4 sets of 14 generations. By this, the Bible is saying that the earth is 4X14 generations old, but Science says it is billions of

---

<sup>1</sup> Job. 1909 (H. D. M. Spence-Jones, Ed.). The Pulpit Commentary (609). London; New York: Funk & Wagnall Company.

years old. So if Science tells the truth, how do I make it harmonize with the Bible?

What theologians did was invent “the Gap Theory.” This theory proposed that there was creation, and then there was a huge time gap, and then a re-creation. This is what they were saying: God made the world, then He judged this world and destroyed it, then He re-created it with Adam and Eve. So the earth is old, but the history of the earth in the Bible is new.

Of course, that is not what the Bible teaches; it is an incorrect theory, influenced by Science and the thinking of the day. Today, the gap theory has been replaced by the evolution theory. Today, there are people that say God created the world in various stages of time. Supposedly science proves evolution is true, supporting the whole universe being “developed” over long, long, periods of time. Consequently Adam was an ape, Bible creation is just a story. All of this denies what the Bible teaches. What does Ex. 20:11 tell us? Everything that exists; heaven and earth, was made by God. Nehemiah tells us that, Colossians tells us that, Exodus 20:11 tells us that, but adds one more fact: God did it all in six days.

Next semester I will teach apologetics. We will not try to prove the Bible by Science but rather see that true Science supports the Bible. We will discuss the fact that the way the age of the earth is determined is very inaccurate. There is great scientific evidence for a very young earth. Really we don’t need Science, we just need to think: When God created the universe, He created it mature.

When God made the trees, did He make a seed and then wait for the seed to become a tree? No! God made a mature tree that could produce seeds. When God made Adam, did He make an infant to grow into maturity? No! The Bible answers the basic question: Which came first, the chicken or the egg? Which came first? The chicken came first of course.

If you listen to what God says, He made the universe mature. The world is saying we live in an expanding universe. We can calculate the rate of expansion scientifically. If we understand the rate of expansion we can find out how old the earth is. Supposedly by this we know it is a bil-

lion years old because we see how long it takes for the galaxies to expand. But the Bible says God made things mature, the galaxies were already in place by God's designed creation, they didn't have to arrive there.

## LECTURE 2

Prof. Question: *Having seen that post-modernism accepts the spiritual world but does not accept truth as an absolute. What do I mean when I say "truth is an absolute"?*

Student Response: *Absolute truth is the Bible, what is in the Bible.*

Prof. Response: *Yes, we know the Bible is the truth. Yet the idea of truth being absolute does not require believing that the Bible is the truth. To say that truth is absolute is to say that what is truth does not change.*

*Truth is changeless in time and space, in whatever you do and wherever you are. We have the truth of gravity. The mass of our earth attracts everything toward it. So, if I am in Cameroon and throw a stone up in the air it is going to come down and hit my head. That's the same everywhere on earth. If I go to the moon, because the mass of the moon is smaller, the effect of gravity is different, but it is still the same law. When we are told that God's Word is truth in John 17 it means every precept and every command in this book is true. It means that what the Bible states is true and has to be interpreted properly within the context of normal language.*

*The Bible is not a geography textbook, but what it was about geography is true. The Bible is not a scientific textbook, but what it was about science is true. For example, the Bible, thousands of years ago, describes the earth as a sphere, (something that is round). It has only been in the last 500 years that man understood the earth is round.*

Student Question: *In the context of post-modernism what is it about absolute truth, does it have to do with Bible?*

Prof. Response: *Truth outside the Scripture involves; the laws of nature, laws of science, things that are always consistent, always accurate, never changing. The problem with post-modernism is that they do not believe truth is absolute. For me, coming from an education that was modernistic;*

*basically accepting truth to be absolute, I do not understand post-modernism. To say that Pastor Bruno's truth is for him and my truth is for me, it is flexible, not absolute is beyond my comprehension. This makes no sense!*

*Student Response:* *Absolute truth to me is something you have to prove or to calculate.*

*Prof. Response:* *I appreciate your comment; however, the Bible would not say that because it is not true. The reason we talk about this in this class, is that we need to understand where our individual culture is. We now see the idea that everybody's truth is their own truth. Therefore "truth" has no foundation to give hope or certainty, especially when we talk about the spiritual world which we cannot see and cannot measure. Everybody's opinion is accepted. Therefore, we need to go back to the source of the truth and teach the reality of the spiritual world.*

*In America, because there is such an ignorance of the spiritual world, people can live without even thinking about it. Atheism is the prominent religion in America. When I speak of America, I'm speaking from a Canadian perspective. Canada has been recognized as an atheistic country; but that's not true of Cameroon. I'm sure there are some in Cameroon who are atheists, but very few. Nevertheless unbelief will increase as people get more educated and as the cultural thinking of post-modernism is built into their lives. We want to study the Scriptures because God created the spiritual world, and He has described it in his Word.*

We began by examining the words of Jesus and Paul to show their assumption that angels exist just as we have the same assumption in Gen. 1:1 that God exists: "*in the beginning God.*" We have Biblical evidence in Ex. 20 that God created the heavens and the earth in six days. We have seen in Nehemiah and Colossians that the heavens include the realm of the angels. So, the first point about the nature of angels was: they are created beings.

**Jn. 4:24:** *God is Spirit, and those who worship Him must worship in spirit and truth.*

The Bible says that God is Spirit and we must worship him in Spirit and in truth. The Bible teaches us that angels are spirits. Yet angels and God are not alike. There are people who say there is a progression involved whereby God is just the superior angel by higher development. You men know the Bible teaches that God had no beginning and has no end. He was not created. God exists forever but angels are created beings, not equal in any way to God. They are spiritual creatures. They also have characteristics that are obviously different from humans.

*Student Question: In our country a lot of people firmly believe in the dream and the Bible talks of dreams. What is the place of dreams in our lives?*

*Prof. Response: The simple answer is the text from Hebrews 2, the context is how God has spoken. This doesn't mean that every time someone has a dream, God is speaking. The text tells us that "in times past God spoke in many ways." When we go back in the OT God used dreams to speak to some people. The Hebrews text goes on to say "but now God has spoken to us in the Son." This indicates the final way God has spoken to man is in the Son who is the Word of God. We won't go into this now in any detail now, but I believe as the Christian saturates his mind in the Word of God, the Spirit of God guides us. I believe that what Hebrews tells us is God is not continuing His revelation today.*

*Now I will not put God in a box and say He cannot use dreams to guide us when our mind is saturated with the Word of God. But we have to listen to what Peter said: And we heard this voice which came from heaven when we were with Him on the holy mountain. We also have the more sure prophetic Word which you do well to heed (2 Pet. 1:18-19).*

*Peter cautioned to be careful not trust experience over the Word of God. The context refers to Peter on the mount of transfiguration, he heard the voice of God, he had the experience of a personal revelation of God. Yet he says, "but we now also have the more sure Word of God," referring to the writings that come from the people of God. We will talk more about this in terms of the deception of Satan.*

*Student Question: Some people are like sick people, who claim that when they were sick, someone came in with a white robe and touched them, promising healing and so forth.*

*Prof. Response: Such things we will answer as we go through the study. I know this study will raise many questions in your culture. Go to the back of your notes and write down the questions, I don't want to miss them. If we can complete 3 or 4 pages of this book each day we will have time to answer questions. Nevertheless, if there is a question relating to the exact text during class, ask the question. I have a different philosophy of teaching. I do not like to answer the questions that the Bible answers. I would rather that you see what the Bible says, than you hear what Dr. Cooper says.*

We have seen in Point A that angels are created beings. Now let's examine other points of the nature of angels.

B. They are innumerable

While we do not know exactly how many angels there are, we can know from Scripture that an exceedingly large number of angels exist.

When we examine these references, note that there are spaces in your notes beside them. You should write the part of the verse that relates to what the truth is. Here you write "innumerable."

**Deut. 33:2:** *Jehovah... came from the ten thousands of holy ones;*

**Ps. 68:17:** *The chariots of God are twenty thousand, even thousands upon thousands;*

**Dan. 7:10:** *thousands of thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him;*

**Heb. 12:22:** *But you have come to Mount Zion and to the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, to an innumerable company of angels.* Here the words "innumerable company" also suggests the number of angels is beyond human comprehension.

**Rev. 5:11:** *I heard a voice of many angels... and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands."*

C. They are spirit beings

**Acts 12:7:** *Now behold, an angel of the Lord stood by him, and a light shone in the prison; and he struck Peter on the side and raised him up, saying, "Arise quickly!" And his chains fell off his hands.*

What are we told about angels in terms of their nature? Where is Peter when this is taking place? He is in the jail. All of a sudden, an angel is beside him. Did the angel get permission from the guards to stand beside him? Did the angel dig a hole in the roof and come down? No! He appeared.

What does that tell you about the kind of being angels are? They are a type of a being that can go through walls. Angels are not physical beings, they are spirit beings.

**Heb. 1:14:** *Are they not all ministering spirits sent forth to minister for those who will inherit salvation?*

This text tells us angels are "Ministering spirits." Angels are spirits who serve God by ministering to believers. We are looking at the characteristics, the nature of angels. From the Word we discovered they are created beings, they are without number, and angels are spirit beings.

We also see in Scripture angels can somehow make themselves visible to individuals in the will of God. I think that speaks more of the will of God than of the nature of angels because they are agents and servants of God. They are in a state of holiness and will never do anything outside the will of God. Is it possible for there to be angels in our presence here today? I do not know if it is possible for them to become visible, I think it will always be the will of God for them to do that. We have seen that when they do become visible as messengers of God, the first thing people want to do is worship them. For me, that explains why God has kept them invisible.

D. They are beings of great power.

**2 Peter 2:11:** *whereas angels, who are greater in power and might, do not bring a reviling accusation against them before the Lord.*

Here the context indicates that angels are greater in power and might. They are beings of great power. But, who are angels greater than? What is the first principle of interpretation? It is Context!

What does Peter say in vs. 10? Angels are greater than “*those who walk according to the flesh.*” Peter is talking about people. In the context Peter is indicating that the Lord knows how to deliver people, he says angels have greater power than people who “*despise authority. They are presumptuous, self-willed. They are not afraid to speak evil of dignitaries.*”

*Student Question:* *I was watching a preacher on TV. He said “In the name of Jesus I am walking on sticks.” That is all he was saying!*

*Prof. Response:* *Do not establish your doctrine from the television. In America it is a common thing and is a disaster in the church.*

**Rev. 20:2, 10:** *And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years... And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.*

There are four names of Satan in this text, which we will talk about in Satanology. In this text someone takes hold of Satan and throws him into the lake of fire. Someone is powerful enough to throw overcome Satan. Who is it? Again, we have to put this in the context, which states that fire came down from God. Therefore, by context, either God Himself cast Satan out or an angel sent by God cast Satan out. We see in the OT when Moses’ body was hidden, the angels of God did not rebuke Satan in his pursuit of the body. This may indicate that God Himself dealt with Satan.

*Student Question:* *Are you going to say something about the 4 names.*

*Prof. Response:* *When we study the doctrine of Satan we will cover what the Bible tells us about the spiritual world we cannot see including details about Satan.*



E. They are intelligent beings.

**2 Sam. 14:20:** *To bring about this change of affairs your servant Joab has done this thing; but my lord is wise, according to the wisdom of the angel of God, to know everything that is in the earth.*

What does this verse tell us? It indicates that angels are intelligent. Nevertheless, I have to explain in this passage. There is a term used that could change our interpretation of this verse. The phrase is: *according to the wisdom of the angel of God.*

Dr. Francis Schaeffer did much study on the phrase “*the angel of the Lord.*” He suggests that every time this phrase is used, it is referring to the pre-incarnate Christ, the Son of God. Yet there is a difference here. This text says “the angel of God,” not “the angel of the Lord.” The challenge here, by use of this specific phrase is to determine whether it speaks of God or a special angel.

This angel, according to context, had the wisdom to grant the king “to know everything that is in the earth.” That suggests Omniscience. We know that angels as created beings do not have the omniscience of God. Therefore, in my notes, I put a question mark here.

Nevertheless, when we talked about the intelligence of angels, let’s consider this: Angels were created during the first week of creation. All the angels were created individually on this day. Therefore, they have witnessed all the activities of creation. If they had even small intelligence at the beginning but have been observing the world for 6000 years, they will grow in intelligence.

I’m emphasizing this point because when we talk about demons and their activity it is critical for us to understand this. If there are angels that have been assigned to be present in a particular place on the earth, how much could they tell us about what took place in that place of the earth? Do you understand the significance of the intellectual impact of viewing all earth history?

Prof. Question: *Are all of you a part of the same tribe of Africa? Do you all have an elder?*

Student Response: Yes.

Prof. Question: How old is your elder?

Student Response: A guess; 88-90 years.

Prof. Question: Is he usually a wise individual?

Student Response: Yes.

Prof. Response: Imagine that this man is 500 years old. He has been in this place for 500 years. Would that make him wiser than the men who are 80 years old.

Student Response: Yes.

Prof. Response: Now consider an angel that has really been around your village even before it came into existence. The knowledge this angel would have is very great. This truth, this understanding of angels applies also to demons and this will help us understand the power of demons and Satan to deceive people.

Now let me explain how I see the creation of angels. When we are told very clearly they have greater power and might than men, I believe that speaks not only of physical power, but also of intellectual power. Angels were created superior to people in every capacity. As well, they have lived since creation and have accumulated through experience great knowledge. That will help us later on to understand the schemes, the plans, and the power of demons. Along with angels, they are very, very intelligent beings.

Student Question: Why is it intelligence here in 2 Samuel when talking about wisdom, but knowledge in other texts.

Prof. Response: The Scriptures use different words to show the steps of learning. Some students have seen this before. We begin with knowledge. Knowledge deals with the facts of something. You recognized this picture of a wheelbarrow. If you had never seen a wheelbarrow before, had no concept of what it was. Yet, by just looking at this, your mind would see certain facts; there is a bucket that would hold something, a wheel and a handle to help you lift this. These facts constitute "knowledge."

*Imagine that your job was to take big stones and hit them with a hammer to make small gravel, as I have witnessed in the nearby quarry. Now your job was also to carry those stones in a bag to a merchant. Every day you take a sack, fill it with your crushed stone, put it on your back and carry it away. If you saw this picture of a wheelbarrow, you would think: "this could help me carry this load!" Now you have gone from knowledge to understanding: "I see how this will help me. I understand how it relates to me and my job." In the Bible languages, God distinguishes the words used about knowledge and understanding. But, does understanding the picture help you carry the load?*

*Student Response:* *-Yes. -No.*

*Prof. Question:* *How does it help you?*

*Student Response:* *It helps my thinking.*

*Prof. Response:* *Okay, but does thinking make the load lighter.*

*Student Response:* *No.*

*Prof. Response:* *Correct! It only helps when you use the wheelbarrow.*

*When you have a wheelbarrow and use the wheelbarrow, that's when it helps. Now we have reached the final step of wisdom.*

*The Bible distinguishes between knowledge, understanding, and wisdom.*

*Sometimes, when these words are used alone in a text they could mean all three concepts. But when all three terms are used together; knowledge, understanding, and wisdom, they address the 3 aspects of learning.*

*Student Question:* *Can you repeat these aspects again.*

*Prof. Response:* *Knowledge is the facts. Understanding is seeing how the facts relate to my life. Wisdom is applying that understanding so my life is affected or changed. I used the knowledge. Because God makes distinction in the steps of learning, I try to use other words to talk about total comprehension, that's why I use "intelligence." Wisdom implies there is a point in a life where application is called for. Therefore, people have to make a decision to act or not.*

*Therefore, it suggests there was a process involved. With God there is no such thing as a process. God does not need the experience of going through knowledge and understanding to be all-wise or omniscient. I think*

*the angels were not given all knowledge, but the knowledge they were given was complete in understanding and wisdom, so there was no need for a process for them.*

*That is why I think the Scriptures use wisdom with angels, and it is appropriate. We know the Bible also says the Lord Himself is an all-wise God. I try to avoid the idea of a process to God's understanding. However, it is significant that Jesus, who was fully God and perfect man, "And the Child grew and became strong in spirit, filled with wisdom; and the grace of God was upon Him." (Lu. 2:40)*

*Student Question: An elder in the village has never been to school, he has wisdom, he has gone through the process compared to a young person even going to university. He wants words to use to describe the old elder. What words can be used?*

*Prof. Response: It is the same words that involve getting the facts, and then understanding how they fit together in our life, then applying this understanding.*

*Everyone goes through this process to be saved. We had to get the facts; Jesus Christ was the Son of God, He came and died for all mankind and rose victoriously. Did the facts in our mind save us? No. We had to realize "I am a sinner and Christ's death and resurrection is meaningful for me because he died for me."*

*But does even that understanding save me? No, I have to put my faith in Jesus by personally accepting Him as my savior. That's wisdom.*

*In your pastoral ministries you must be very careful not to leave people with just understanding. We have to call people to the wisdom of decision and we know from 2 Cor. 2:14 that the natural man does not receive such understanding alone. The Spirit of God brings application to their life so they know they need to make a decision for God. For depraved humanity that process is absolutely necessary. It is not wrong to use the word "wisdom," but I use "intelligence" because I like to separate this process for people. When I use the word "intelligence" there is always a question about the facts which enables me to explain further and help people understand.*

F. They are masculine in appearance.

**Matt. 28:5:** *But the angel answered and said to the women, "Do not be afraid, for I know that you seek Jesus who was crucified."*

**Mark 16:5, 6:** *And entering the tomb, they saw a young man clothed in a long white robe sitting on the right side; and they were alarmed. And he said to them, Be not affrighted: You seek Jesus of Nazareth,*

In this text we see two Mary's enter the tomb. What do they see? Matthew writes they see an angel, Mark reports they see a being that appears as a man. The evidence seems clear this was a ministering angel. The angel appeared as a man, not as a woman. This is consistent throughout the Scriptures. When angels do appear to people, they always appear as a man, not a woman.

In America, there is a move to remove sexual reference in every situation. It has to do with the women's rights movement. It is true that in America and even in Africa women are held back or limited. A policeman who is male and a policeman who is female do the same work, but the male gets more pay. I can understand the reasons women have sought equal rights.

Unfortunately, the result is that there are now publishing companies that have removed all Bible references of God as male in the Bible. The pronoun for God in the Bible is never the female "she." There is nowhere in Scripture where an angel appears as a woman. And in my experience, when women who know Christ as Saviour, get offended about this, I give them one little answer; don't argue with me, argue with God. I am going to teach the words of the Scripture, and they have meaning and purpose. If you don't like the words, you have to deal with God. It is not sexist, it is not male prominence, it is God's Word that designate God as "Him" and "He" not "She." That's just the way God has chosen to reveal Himself, and I will not argue with God.

G. They are celibate.

**Matt. 22:30:** *For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are as the angels of God in heaven.*

In Matt. 22: 5, 6 we are given information regarding the sex of angels. What does it tell us in this passage? They are celibate, they do not reproduce. Christ is explaining the resurrection. He states that in the resurrection people will not reproduce. There will be no reproduction in our glorified state. In the resurrected state will there be the appearance of women and men? Of course! When I'm with the Lord in glory and my wife is with the lord in glory, she will still be feminine in appearance, and I will still appear masculine. In God's design of all creation, angels will always have the appearance of man.

We already have seen that angels always appear masculine. I don't need to explain anything more, the Bible just shows us that when angels appear it is always in male form. But we are also told here that they are celibate. Angels never reproduce. That is important to understand because it helps us realize that if they don't reproduce, then they were all created at the same time. That's as far as we can go. We can't talk any more about this. Why are they always masculine in appearance? I don't know, that's the way God created them. Does that mean that masculinity is superior to femininity? No. we are talking about angels, not talking about people. In my anthropology class you will learn God made Adam and Eve equal with different roles.

Student Question: I have a problem with "celibate."

Prof. Response: Men, the truth is that in our glorified state, sex will be behind us. If that disappoints you, you will have to deal with God. Heaven and earth will be populated with angels, and people appearing as male and female. But, we will not be husband and wife, we will be brothers and sisters, the bride of Christ, and we will be perfect. So, all the temptations of the flesh will no longer be there.

H. They are eternal.

**Luke 20:36:** *nor can they die anymore, for they are equal to the angels and are sons of God, being sons of the resurrection.*

This passage teaches that angels don't die. They are everlasting. Now let me explain the difference of words. We see in the Scriptures when we

accept Christ as our Saviour we have “eternal life.” But, here “eternal,” is “everlasting” life. In English “everlasting” means having no end, but “eternal” means having no beginning and no end. From an English language viewpoint salvation really is not eternal life, because people have a beginning. So again our language issues are different than the Bible language issues and where God makes a distinction often we do not.

Which is true about angels: Do they have eternal life or everlasting life? They have everlasting life because they have a beginning, they were created. Only one has eternal life, and that is God. Philip looks confused. Do you understand? I am not arguing about the words, I want you to understand the concepts.

When we are saved, we gain life with no end. Yet we have a beginning because we are created; nevertheless, we have no end. That’s the way angels are and the way saved man is. In the English language this is everlasting life. But God has no beginning and no end. Therefore, in the English language, He alone has eternal life which means no beginning and no end.

When we are in any culture and teaching God’s truth, we have to be accurate, we have to help people understand all the truth. That does not mean that I never use the term “eternal life,” I tell people they can have eternal life, it is the Bible phrase we use for salvation. Yet, when we are teaching people about life, we need to explain the difference between everlasting life and eternal life.

I. They are subordinate creatures.

**1 Peter 3:22:** *who has gone into heaven and is at the right hand of God, angels and authorities and powers having been made subject to Him.*

This text tells us that angels are subordinate beings, under the authority of God. This was the very problem Satan had. He did not want to be subordinate to God. As we examine the nature of angels, we would have no way of knowing this unless God, through His Word, explained this. We do not see angels; therefore, only God’s Word gives us true understanding. Man’s myths, traditions or speculations are without merit. Only God the creator possesses the truth about angels.

Now we want to close this class because the next class starts in 10 minutes. I'm giving you homework. I want you to go to the library and look up "cherubim" and "seraphim" to see what the dictionary says about these. If you have more than one dictionary, look in them both. Write out what a seraphim is and what a cherubim is. I know I have given you two days of homework, but this is simple. Bring it back tomorrow. I want you to do this before I give you the answer tomorrow.

*Prof. Question: Any questions from today?*

*Student Response: Going back to celibacy, when I found out there is no marriage in heaven, I believe the Bible.*

*Prof. Response: The idea of marriage stopping in heaven is hard to imagine because marriage is a great blessing in life. When we think of it logically the purpose of sex is procreation. Even though God indicates in the Scripture that sex is to be pleasurable. That's what the Song of Solomon is all about. We are to enjoy our wife's body.*

*We are talking about the wrong thing here because you are away from your wives for 3 weeks! Our brother Simplice is thinking of his wife right now. He says "I don't want to be here."*

*I can only offer this truth: In Ephesians we are told that the relationship between a man and a woman is a picture of what our relationship will be with Christ, not in the sense of sex but in the sense of absolute pleasure in our relationship with the living God. The fullness that we will have when we live in the presence of the living God is greater than any pleasure we presently have.*

*Once while teaching eschatology and sharing about the Rapture that could happen at any moment, there was a student in the class that was to be married in two weeks. When I mentioned "any moment," he cried: "No! Please God, not for 2 weeks." He was obviously not thinking about the joy of being with God!*



### LECTURE 3

Prof. Question: Let's take a moment and interact regarding what you have learned or perhaps what has surprised you regarding angels:

Student Response: I was impressed with the broad diversity among angels appearances as Ezekiel's vision or how they can appear as men.

Prof. Response: The vision of Ezekiel is a difficult thing to interpret. There is definitely a description of beings as part of the vision. But there is also a wheel within a wheel and multiple eyes, to say these represents angels, or some parts of the vision angels, I am not certain of that or not. My own opinion is that the entire vision involves symbols showing the nature and character of God. I appreciate the comment anyway. You are right that in the Scriptures we see different individualities of angels when they appear.

Student Comment: -This class is very interesting because I never thought about angels, demons, and Satan. Sometimes we get confused, even when we think about the difficulty with Bible numbers. There are so many issues. -I had a different position about characters and stuff. This is new to me. -First of all I am thankful to God for the trinity and the power of this class because I came out of where they have so many ideas about devil and spirits, I have asked myself how to deal with it.

Prof. Response: Even though we have not proceeded any further, what you have received already will help a great deal when you return to your churches.

Student Question: The class is more theory, not practical. After studying here will we get more practical, for example, if in the church I face someone with demons causing him to fall on the ground.

Prof. Response: I have experienced demonic influence in Canada, and God prepared me for Africa. These are the things we should have time to discuss when we get through the class notes. In the context of focusing on what the Scriptures say, you perceive it as being mostly theory. But theology does have very practical applications in our lives. The Spirit opens His Word up to us in our circumstances. I pray that before this class is over you will see how these truths truly affect you in your ministry.

*I appreciated the comments about the class and how it is helping you understand. To encourage you, the goal of the school is not to just pass on information, it is to show you not only that the Bible has the answers, but also how to arrive at these answers in your own studies. My own focus at the school here is to teach the theology. But there is nothing that I teach in the class that you could not discover with your own study of the Scriptures. You could get a concordance and look at every reference that speaks of angels and every reference that speaks of demons and every reference that speaks of the names of Satan, and study them. Then would have all the theology you require.*

*We looked at the general nature of angels. In our approach of systematic theology, the information is not exhaustive. It does not touch on everything the Bible says.*

#### **LECTURE 4**

In our examination of the nature of angels, there are passages we have not examined, and there are things still to be discovered in your own study. What we are trying to do in this class is to get a general concept of what God says about creation that we cannot observe in the spirit world. We have been reminded that angels were created. They are not gods at earlier stages of development as some of the cults describe humanity. For example, the Jehovah Witness teaches that people will become like Jesus, the son of God because He was just an advanced man, not fully God.

We have seen that the angels are without number, thousands upon thousands. We have seen that even though they can make themselves visible, they are spirit beings. We can see, from Scriptures, angels have great power and might. Yet, because they are not God, they are not all-powerful. Only God is all-powerful. I believe that when the Scriptures use “power and might,” power usually deals with authority and might with strength. For angels, although they are not all-powerful with all-authority, they exceed man in both.

We discovered that angels are very intelligent, having appropriate wisdom from God at creation, and through the span of their own 6 or 7 thou-

sand year existence they have accumulated much knowledge. Scripture also teaches that when angels, in the will of God, appear to people, they always have a masculine appearance. Nevertheless, the Word teaches that they are celibate because angels do not reproduce. By this, we conclude that all the angels were created during the six-day week of creation. The Bible indicates angels are everlasting beings; they have a beginning, but they do not end.

Angels are subordinate creatures in that God has authority over them. When we look at what we discovered we gained a good comprehension of angels. Nevertheless, we have to be very careful not to add to this nor try to speculate. The mind of man always wants to know more even though God has chosen not to give us more. For example, we cannot say “all angels are male.” All we know is that they appear masculine. We know they are spirit and without number, but we should not be like the early church when theologians argued how many angels can rest on the end of a pin. That is just foolish speculation.

We are told in Scripture there is identity among angels. There are angels who have personal names. Does this mean all angels have a personal name? The Bible does not give this information. My opinion is; yes, God named them all, because they all have an individual relationship to God. God knows them by name just as He knows each of us by name. Is God’s knowledge limited to only remembering humans by name? No!

*Prof Question: Name some of the angels.*

*Student Response: Michael, the archangel, Gabriel, Raphael*

*Prof. Response: Can you give me a text? No. Use a concordance and look these names up yourself, it will be a good exercise for you.*

### **III. Identification of Angels**

These are the angels whose personal names we know:

A. Lucifer

**Is. 14:12:** *How you are fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning!  
How you are cut down to the ground, You who weakened the nations!*

Here Satan is mentioned by another name. In English it is translated Lucifer. The Hebrew word is הַיְלֵל (*hay-lale*), which means light bearer or shining or morning star. Wiersbe writes:

This highest of God's angels tried to usurp the throne of God and capture for himself the worship that belongs only to God (Matt. 4:8–10). The name "Lucifer" ("morning star") indicates that Satan tries to imitate Jesus Christ, who is "the bright and morning star" (Rev. 22:16). "I will be like the Most High" reveals his basic strategy, for he is an imitator (Isa. 14:14; 2 Cor. 11:13–15).<sup>2</sup>

B. Michael the Archangel

**Jude 9a:** *Yet Michael the archangel, in contending with the devil,*

Michael, the archangel is mentioned here. The idea of archangel means there is some order in the angels. Michael is an archangel. He is mentioned in Daniel and Revelation.

The term "archangel" designates Michael's authority and prominence. In Dan. 10:13, 21 he is designated as a "prince" (*archōn*)—as "the great prince" (*ho archōn ho megas*, Theodotion) in Dan. 12:1.<sup>52</sup> In Revelation he leads the battle against the dragon and the evil angels (Rev 12:7). His prominence continues in other Jewish literature (1QM 9:16; *1 Enoch* 9:1; 10:11; 20:5; 24:6).<sup>3</sup>

If someone is interested, that would be a good topic for your paper, to summarize who Michael is and what is said about him.

C. Gabriel

**Daniel 8:16:** *And I heard a man's voice between the banks of the Uлай, who called, and said, "Gabriel, make this man understand the vision."*

Here Gabriel is mentioned. The English name is a transliteration of the Hebrew גַּבְרִיאֵל (*gāb·rī·'ēl*), meaning "man of El" or man of God. There are four Bible references mentioning Gabriel; the angel God used to send two messages of great importance to Daniel (Dan. 8:16, 9:21), the angel

---

<sup>2</sup> Wiersbe, W. W. (1996). *Be Comforted*. "Be" Commentary Series (46). Wheaton, IL: Victor Books.

<sup>52</sup> "The great angel" ὁ ἄγγελος ὁ μέγας in B.

<sup>3</sup> Schreiner, T. R. (2003). *Vol. 37: 1, 2 Peter, Jude*. The New American Commentary (458). Nashville: Broadman & Holman Publishers.

sent to Zacharias, and also to Mary announcing the birth of Jesus (Lu. 1:19, Lu. 1:26).

Gabriel may be another opportunity to do a paper, but there is not as much mentioned as Michael, the archangel. In the Scriptures these are the only names of angels given. Does this suggest every angel has a name? No, but it would not surprise me.

Now we come to the section in our notes indicating types of angels.

#### D. Cherubim

**Ge 3:24:** *So he drove out the man; and he placed at the east of the garden of Eden Cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the way of the tree of life.* The Cherubim are mentioned 57 times in Scripture. They were a class of winged angels beings which serve God.

The Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament (TWOT) states the following: Cherubim are mentioned first as angelic guardians of Paradise lost (Gen 3:24). Next they appear as winged figures of pure gold facing each other and overshadowing the atonement cover (NIV, the KJV is mercy seat, Ex 25:20). They were also a prominent figure in the decorations of the tabernacle curtains (Ex. 26:1, 31). Nothing is said here of their shape except that they had faces, presumably human, and wings... In Solomon's temple, cherubim were widely used for decoration (1 Kgs. 6:29, 32; 7:29). The cherubim of the decorations each had two faces, of a man and of a lion, facing in opposite directions.<sup>4</sup>

#### E. Seraphim

**Is. 6:2, 6:** *Above it stood seraphim; each one had six wings: with two he covered his face, with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew... Then one of the seraphim flew to me, having in his hand a live coal which he had taken with the tongs from the altar.* Another class of angels is the

---

NIV New International Version of the Bible

KJV King James Version of the Bible

<sup>4</sup> Harris, R. L. (1999). 1036 כְּרֻבִים. In R. L. Harris, G. L. Archer, Jr. & B. K. Waltke (Eds.), *Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament* (R. L. Harris, G. L. Archer, Jr. & B. K. Waltke, Ed.) (electronic ed.) (454). Chicago: Moody Press.

Seraphim, שֶׁרָפִיִּים (*sārāp*) in the Hebrew singular form. This term has two Biblical uses:

I. *Fiery serpent*. This word is used five times: of the poisonous snakes in the wilderness (Num. 21:6, 8; Deut. 8:15) and figuratively of threatened dangerous snakes (Isa 14:29; 30:6).

II. *Seraph* (plural, seraphim). Used only in Isa 6:2, 6, these angelic creatures are surely to be compared with the cherubim of the temple decoration and of Ezekiel's later vision. There is nothing in the context to suggest serpents' bodies. Indeed they are said to have feet (Isa 6:2). These angelic beings were brilliant as flaming fire, symbolic of the purity and power of the heavenly court.<sup>5</sup>

*Prof. Question:* Any questions or comments or anything to add according to your own research that these two men have done.

*Student Response:* -Seraphim is a standing above ministering to God. -The function is to worship God in holiness, they both do the same thing. -They are there to praise God, to support, working around God's form.

Our conclusion is that these terms are probably not names, but kinds of angel. We are introduced to something that is unique with God. Angels are created beings. They are innumerable but even in the creation of angels, it is apparent that God did not make every angel exactly the same. There is definitely an order among the angels. We will see when we study Satan that he was at one time the highest ranking angel before he fell. If we go further, we see that an angel such as Michael seems to be an angelic warrior. Gabriel seems to be an angel that announces information to men. And we have two classifications of angels, the Seraphim, and the Cherubim, described uniquely with wings and faces.

In God's created spirit world we have angels in heaven, and visiting earth, sometimes visible, but normally invisible. We will see the spirit

---

<sup>5</sup> Harris, R. L. (1999). 2292 שֶׁרָפִיִּים. In R. L. Harris, G. L. Archer, Jr. & B. K. Waltke (Eds.), *Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament* (R. L. Harris, G. L. Archer, Jr. & B. K. Waltke, Ed.) (electronic ed.) (884). Chicago: Moody Press.

world includes the presence of God but also includes the temporal space within our own existence. Satan was dismissed from the presence of God when he fell. Although according to Job, he still has access to God. We find out from Daniel that this spirit world had conflict and a war in which Michael the archangel was involved. When Elijah was surrounded and threatened to be destroyed by the armies, he knew there was a host of angels guarding him. He prayed for his servant's eyes to be opened to see the host of angels all around. This spirit world which we cannot see is a busy world.

#### F. Angel of the Lord

There is one other "Angel" identified in Scripture that we need to take a few minutes to think about. This angel is mentioned many times.

**Gen. 16:7:** *And the angel of the LORD found her by a fountain of water in the wilderness, by the fountain in the way to Shur.*

Here we have the story of Sarai and Abram who were anxious to have the child of promise. Sarai was barren and therefore, she gave Abram her maid Hagar to bear a child. When Hagar conceived and gave birth to a male child, Sarai was very upset and had Hagar and the child sent away. In this conflict we are introduced to the Angel of the Lord..

"Angel of the Lord" is a term used considerably in the OT. There has been much discussion about who the Angel of the Lord is. We see in this context that the Angel of the Lord affirmed that Hagar's child would be successful (vs. 10) and multiply. Also, the Angel of the Lord told Hagar to go back and submit to Sarai. This angel was unique in having information regarding the future of Hagar and her child. Now someone read vs. 13.

**Gen. 16:13:** *Then she called the name of the LORD who spoke to her, You-Are-the-God-Who-Sees; for she said, "Have I also here seen Him who sees me?"*

The Angel of the Lord according to this verse is God, Himself. It was the Lord who spoke to her. And Hagar gave Him a name: "The God who sees." In this passage, clearly the Angel of the Lord is the Lord God.

**Ex. 3:2-4:** *And the angel of the LORD appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush:*

This is the story of Moses before the burning bush. You know the story. Moses is tending the sheep in the field. He looks up and sees a bush that is burning. Now if you are out in your field looking after your sheep and there is a bush on fire, because it is a danger you will do something. Here, the fire itself motivates Moses to go and see what is happening.

The text describes the situation. We are told it is the Angel of the Lord that is present in this bush. But he doesn't appear as a man, he appears as fire. Moses draws closer to this fire and God calls to him in verse 6. He identifies Himself: *"I am the God of your ancestors; I am the God of Moses, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, of Jacob."* Once again we see that the Angel of the Lord is the Lord God.

The great theologian Francis Schaeffer did a thorough study on the term Angel of the Lord and concluded that whenever the phrase is used in Scripture, it is the Lord God. He further concluded this was a "Christophony," a manifestation of the pre-incarnate Christ. Therefore, when we are reading through the OT and come to the phrase "the angel of the Lord" I agree that this was an appearance of the Son of God before His incarnation.

As such, we cannot put the Angel of the Lord in the same category as the angels. Nevertheless, because the word "angel" means "messenger," we conclude that one of the functions of the Son of God in the OT was to interact with people. When the Son of God became man, His function did not change, it was expanded to incarnation and salvation provider. That's why in John called Jesus "the Word." He is the living message of God.

*Prof. Question: Any questions?*

*Student Response: 1-In the book of Exodus we talked about God Himself showed Himself to Moses. How come now from God the Father, how can we come to Jesus as the Lord God?*

*Prof. Response: We need to understand that there is one God. God emphasized this in the OT. "The Lord thy God is one God." That is what distinguished Israel from all other nations. For 4000 years God drilled into His people, "the Lord your God is one God." When we come the New Testa-*



ment (NT) and the days of the seed, we see visibly the Son of God. The evidence of the Son of God in His ministry was clearly in the OT. Job knew his Redeemer lived. David speaks of coming before and worshipping the Son. We see at creation the Spirit of God moved over the creation. When God created man He said “let us make man in our own image.”

We see in the NT that the church has been guilty of dividing up who God is. Jesus said “if you have seen me, you have seen the Father.” God is one God existing in three persons. God has revealed this to us so we can perceive the functions of the three persons which accomplished the work of the one God. Simply stated, the Father plans, the Son executes, the Spirit applies.

So when we talk about “theophanies” in the OT, we are talking about God presenting Himself in various ways before people. But, we also see the presence of God in the OT, not as clouds or fire, but as people. When the Angel of the Lord came to Abram and spoke of what would take place in Sodom and Gomorrah, He was visible as a man, this we refer to as a “Christophany.” Nevertheless, we are talking about the same one God.

To be honest in ourselves, we cannot comprehend who God is as one God and three persons. There is nothing in our existence to compare to this. In our Sunday School classes we try to help children understand the Trinity by using illustrations, but these are not good illustrations. We use water, it has 3 forms- vapour, liquid, solid. But the molecules of water cannot be vapour, liquid, and solid at the same time. Yet God is.

We use the egg; we have the shell, the egg white, the egg yolk. Yet, they are actually individual elements with different appearances. They are not the same thing at the same time. The closest we can come for an illustration is man with body, soul, and spirit. However, body, soul, and spirit are not three persons. There is nothing in our experience that can help us understand the Trinity; we accept it by faith.

All I know is that God said “God is one.” Yet, when He says “God,” it is in the plural form: אֱלֹהִים (“elohiym). In Hebrew the plural has different meanings. There is a way of expressing in the Hebrew language singularity, and a way of expressing two, and a way of expressing more than two

*(three or more). The plural of God is in the form of three or more. We just accept the fact of God as true.*

*In the NT the term God θεός (theos) is used in both singular and plural, definite, and indefinite. Yet in the Greek culture the deepest reality is God. One of the things that made the Pharisees so angry was when Jesus said "I knew Abraham," and "before Abraham was, I am." I can see the blood rising in the Pharisees faces. They responded with: "How can you say this, it is blasphemy?"*

*When Peter made the confession, you are Christ, the King, the Son of the living God. What did He say to Peter? He said "It is not flesh and blood that revealed this, my Father revealed this to you." It was an astounding statement for a Jewish, man after 4000 years of traditional teaching, to say "I am God." The truth of the reality of God is something that needs to be taught, even though it will create questions. It supports and enforces what we are told in Hebrews. "He that comes to God must believe that He is."*

*This means not only that He exists, that's faith; but He exists in the way that He says He exists; one God in three persons. Jesus said: "If you've seen Me, you've seen the Father" which clearly stated the Father and Jesus are one. I do not understand this, but I believe it by faith. God opened my eyes as well! Share that with your people. Let them understand that every element of our dependence on God is of faith, not just salvation in the death of Jesus. Paul said it this way, "If you confess with your mouth the Lord Jesus and believe in your heart that God has raised Him from the dead, you will be saved." (Rom. 5:9).*

*I don't know if you are familiar with John MacArthur, a great teacher and a great pastor. He suggests salvation is based on acknowledging Jesus as the Lord of your life and the Master of everything in your life. That is not what this text says. There are times in my life as a Christian that I have not yielded everything to Jesus as Lord. Am I the only one? I don't think so! What that text is saying is that Jesus is God. In the context of Paul writing to the church at Rome, a mixture of Jews and Gentiles, this*

*truth was only received by the grace of God as people come to realize it by faith.*

A couple more points to make today. We've seen some names of angels, some types of angels, and God is giving us some insights into this spiritual world that we cannot see. Has He described everything about the spiritual world? Certainly not. If God used the same creativity to create the spirit world as He did our physical world, there is much yet to understand. Yet, He has given us what He wants us to know. We accept it by faith.

#### G. Other terms of identification

There are also other terms used referring this spiritual world.

**Col. 1:16:** *For by Him all things were created that are in heaven and that are on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers. All things were created through Him and for Him.*

This verse is a very interesting because it distinguishes between what God created in heaven and in earth. He talks about things that are visible and things that are not visible, and then he says "whether" which seems to suggest that what he is going to say next has both "in heaven" and "on earth" in mind. In the original Greek language which I think is better translated into English than French, the connection between thrones and dominions and principalities and powers seem to describe both what's in heaven and what's on earth.

There is parallelism here. Heaven and earth, visible and invisible, and the next phrases are also parallels; thrones and dominions on earth and principalities and powers in the spirit world. However, another option is also acceptable. When the conjunction is used, it could be interpreted to mean that all of the following; thrones, dominions, principalities, powers are each in heaven and each in earth. Whichever way you interpret the text, the conclusion is the same: there is order and authority in the spirit world as well as the physical world. The terms that are used here are referring to both the spirit world and the physical world.

**Eph. 6:12:** *For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places.*

This verse helps us understand Col. 1:16. Paul is talking about the spiritual warfare every believer is in. He says we do not wrestle flesh and blood. We do not wrestle against the physical world; we don't wrestle against the world that is seen, but we wrestle against what is not seen. This involves the principalities, the powers, and the rulers of the darkness of this age. What Paul is saying is that our battle, even in this world, is against the spiritual forces that are influencing this world.

We cannot allow our people to think the spiritual world is up where God is, and the world that we live in is down here totally apart from the spiritual world. Our existence is confronted by both worlds. We see this in the OT where the prophet speaks of the king who is opposing the work of God and then speaks of that same king being Satan. It is a physical king, he gives his name, but then he talks about defeating Satan. In the book of Ephesians, we see this clear distinction by being told we used to be under the influence of the god of this world:

The unsaved world is influenced by “*the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now works in the children of disobedience.*” (Eph. 2:2). This is clearly Satan and his host. In our study of angelology we have seen the nature of angels; that they are spirit and they are created, and they are subordinate, and all those other things. We have seen that there are in Scripture individual names for angels. We see there are types of angels, Cherubim and Seraphim and perhaps others not mentioned. We also see that the spiritual world in which angels exist is also described as having principalities and powers and that there is an aspect of the spirit world influencing the physical world in its power and authority. This leads us to understand that as humanity has two great divisions; the just and the unjust, so there are two great divisions of angels.

*Student Question: There are Christians who are influenced as well and the fight is not from flesh and blood, yet I think some Christians want to fight*

*them, such as the charismatics that say, “In the name of Jesus I put my hand on you and deliver you from Satan.”*

*Prof. Response: We will talk about this later when we talk about Satan and demons.*

#### H. Two great divisions

There are first of all, the angels of God.

**Gen. 32:1, 2:** *So Jacob went on his way, and the angels of God met him. When Jacob saw them, he said, "This is God's camp." And he called the name of that place Mahanaim.*

We see here that Jacob has become aware of his unique call because God revealed His angels to Jacob. We see God revealing angels several times in the OT: Jacob saw the angels on the ladder, and Elijah prayed and his servant saw the host of God's angels around the city protecting them. So we see in Scripture, especially in the OT there are a host of angels called the “angels of God.” These are the angels we have examined so far in our study.

The Bible also indicates there are angels of Satan.

**Rev. 12:7-9:** *Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels... and Satan, which deceives the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.*

In this passage, war has broken out in heaven. There was division among the angels, and Satan seems to be the leader of this rebellion. There is a host of angels that are God's angels, and a host of angels that are with Satan. When we go back to Ephesians and talk about the spirit that now works in the children of disobedience, we see the influence of Satan's angels focused against humanity.

*Student Question: We are talking about the visible world which we can see and the authority in the world. Is this the same kind of authority we have on the earth?*

*Prof. Response: There is much explanation needed, but what I wanted you to see, with the phrase “principalities and powers, authorities etc.,” is the structure or order of authority. Some angels are subordinate to others, even as men on earth are subordinate to other men. There is subordination in both worlds. How such authority in the angelic world filtered into humanity is a part of our understanding of demonology. This begins with understanding the answer to this question- “How did Satan become the god of this world?” That is your homework for today.*

*I need to collect your homework on Cherubim and Seraphim. Some of you have written your homework answers in your notes. These need to be written out on a separate sheet with your name on it to be handed in. Do this for tomorrow. Remember my philosophy, you need to find out your own answers.*

## **LECTURE 5**

Your homework was to identify how Satan became the god of this world. Now just for the sake of the two students who are new with us today, let’s take a brief moment to review.

We began our class by looking at the cultures and superstitions and traditions that exist in every culture. We discovered that some of these superstitions and traditions move into what we would call the religious realm or the spiritual realm. In the history of the world we have seen from the educational and philosophical perspective there have also been influences on the mind of man.

So, by tradition and superstitions there are impressions on our minds that are actually contrary to truth. And in the progression of philosophical differences there have also been differences on the mind of man, especially those involved in education. As I mentioned, when I was in school it was the age of modernism. Truth was accepted an absolute that never changes. That is a good thing. However, modernists believe that to arrive at truth necessitated scientific procedure. The mindset was, if you cannot see it, if you cannot weigh it, if you cannot measure it, then it does not exist.

If you are a modernist, would you believe there is a God? No! Can you weigh God? No! Can you see God? No! Therefore, God doesn't exist. The spirit world doesn't exist either. In the changing philosophies, we have come to post-modernism now. Post-modernism begins by believing that the truth is not absolute. It suggests personal understanding and circumstances influence scientific procedures. Therefore, research conclusions can be different.

With post-modernism the attitude became: "Well, everyone has their own truth." The Muslim has his truth, the Hindu has his truth, the scientist has his truth, and the philosopher has his truth. Because everyone has their own truth, there is no denial of the spirit world because that's what some people believe and that's their truth. You can almost define post-modernism as happy and contented agnosticism, the state of not knowing: "I have life, and my truth and about anything else; I don't know, and I don't care."

Although post-modernism, which is growing now in Africa, acknowledges that there could be a spiritual world since there is no absolute truth, in my opinion it is more difficult to reach post-modernists than to reach the modernist. It is easier to take the Bible and speak to a modernist who believes in absolute truth and share that the Bible is that absolute truth. But, to take the Bible and reach a post-modernist who does not believe in absolute truth, by saying the Bible is absolute truth, they don't care. I speak from the perspective of apologetics of defending the faith before evil.

Let us not become discouraged because we are presuppositionists. Can we argue people into the kingdom of God? No! What does the Bible say: "*Some sow, some water, God gives the increase!*" Peter said to Jesus, "*You are the Christ the son of the living God.*" Jesus did not say to him, "I am glad you were with John the Baptist, and he convinced you of this." He said, "*My Father has revealed this to you.*" In the context that you will face in this country of Cameroon, with growing post-modernist thinking, you will seek to reach people who have their feet planted in mid-air, with no foundation. Be faithful and sow the Word anyway!

We already discussed in class how some of the people in your area have very interesting and very wrong ideas about the spiritual world. But when we go to the absolute truth of the Word of God, we have God's information about this unseen world. We see that it is a very active world filled with unique beings. When we began our look at angels, we started to discover things about angels that we could never discover apart from the Bible.

*Prof.: Share some of the things we have discovered about angels.*

*Student Response: They are wise.*

*Prof. Response: Can you elaborate on the intelligence of these? You may not have been in class, but go ahead.*

*Student Response: They are wise because they live longer.*

*Prof. Response: Yes! There is accumulated knowledge because they have been around since creation. In Scripture there are two terms about angels that speak to their intelligence. The Scriptures describe the angels with power and might and with authority and strength. The word strength in Scripture is also applied to knowledge. So there was in creation of angels, an endowment of great natural intelligence. With that intelligence the period of 6000 years in which every angel has lived has allowed them to accumulate greater knowledge.*

*What else have we learned about angels?*

*Student Response: They are spiritual beings. They were created.*

*Prof. Response: Very important, they were created beings. In America there is such a mess of understanding regarding angels. The falsehood in America comes from 2 sources- the false teaching of cults such as JW's and the power of media, such as television and movies. I have met people in Canada who believe that humanity is in progression, and we will eventually become gods. Angels are just part of the process. I met people that believe when a man dies or a woman dies, they become angels. All of this is part of the tradition and superstition of America, and it would be even more so in Africa.*

*What else have you learned?*



Student Response: They have names. Three have been assigned names.

Prof. Response: What are the names of the three angels identified in Scripture.

Student Response: -Michael, the archangel which expresses some level of authority. -Gabriel the announcer, the trumpet blower. -The Angel of the Lord -A manifestation of God. -In reading Schaeffer's explanation, I agree with him, he convinced me of this.

Prof. Response: We are missing one name. In English it is translated "Lucifer," in French it is "Shining Star." It is with a capital to indicate it is a name.

Student Question: When we come to Job we will see there is a reference to angels as Shining Stars. I think that this is relating to one individual, that was the name.

Prof. Response: What else have we learned about angels? They can be visible. They can in the will of God present themselves. What appearance do they always have? Male, sorry sister. That is so we can tell our wives "you are the angel in my life." If my children were in my class they would laugh!

Student Response: You cannot number them. They are innumerable. It is a hyperbole. In another text it says they are innumerable, without number.

Prof. Question: What else have we learned? They are subordinate to God, under the authority of God, as all things are. In the context of this subordination the meaning of the word "angel" means "messenger." So clearly angels are the agents of God. We are still missing some important things here.

Student Response: They cannot reproduce. Although they appear masculine, they do not reproduce which means they were all created at one time.

Student Question: In my church, some men refuse to marry a woman who has a demon. Can anyone verify if this is true?

Prof. Response: When we start to study demons, we will see how deceptive they are.

Student Response: There are kinds of angels, Cherubim and Seraphim.

*Prof. Response: I personally believe God has given personal names to every angel. Because he has a personal relationship with them even as with us. But we also see there are different types of angels. The seraphim and cherubim express this. Is that all the categories of types of angels? We don't know.*

*Student Question: Are angels everlasting?*

*Prof. Response: They have a beginning but they have no end. The angels of God abide forever with Him, and the angels of Satan, which are called demons or devils, and "God did not spare the angels who sinned, but cast them down to hell and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved for judgment;" (2 Pet. 2:4). We will study this in another class.*

*That brings us up to date and that was a good review to help the new students have an idea of what we have covered.*

We concluded our last class by talking about the two great divisions; the angels of God and the angels of Satan. When we come to demonology and Satanology, we will learn about how this division took place. For the moment, let me explain that at the point of division each group was confirmed in their own decision. We have the angels that did not fall. They pursued their loyalty to God and are confirmed in their holiness.

A host of angels, including Lucifer, followed him in his pride and rebellion. They fell from the grace that God had endowed them with. They are confirmed in their ungodliness and wickedness. They are the spiritual enemies of God. We will take a close look at them, and discover what the Bible says about demons and Satan later.

It begs the immediate question: "Are fallen angels redeemable?" Do they have the privilege to be restored to God through salvation a of some kind? The answer follows:

*Student Question: are there more type of angels, or are this is all you are giving us?*

*Prof. Response: It is important that we do not invent different kinds just for our satisfaction. There are things we are just not given information*

*about in Scripture. For example, will animals be in heaven? We know animals do not have souls or spirits to be saved, but when the Lord returns isn't he riding on a white horse? In Revelation we see there are animals involved in the vision regarding the judgements of God. Now is that symbolic or some kind of animal that is in heaven? I don't know.*

*Student Response: I believe the redemption is taking into account all of creation. Romans says so. When God saved Noah, he took care of animals as well.*

*Prof. Response: I think though, in the context of what Romans says about "the whole world waiting for redemption," that we have to be careful to understand what is restored, which is humanity, and what is made new again, which is the new earth and the new heaven.*

*I spoke in the class in anthropology about my dog being a very smart dog, and I could teach it to do many things. My dog got cancer, and we had to put it down; it is dead. I do not expect to see my dog in heaven. My dog had no spirit and therefore is not everlasting.*

#### **IV. Are Angels Redeemable?**

There are three texts in your notes to consider regarding the question: Are angels redeemable?

**Matthew 25:41:** *Then He will also say to those on the left hand, "Depart from Me, you cursed, into the everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels."...*

In the context here, Jesus is sharing a sermon. In His sermon He says there are those who will come to Him and claim that they knew Him, but His answer to them is "*no you never knew me, depart into ever-lasting darkness.*" This is the ever-lasting fire that those who never have been redeemed as humans will be in. How is this described in the text? It is described as being "prepared for angels and demons" or prepared for Satan and his angels.

This place, where unsaved man will finally end up in, is the lake of fire (Rev. 10:14). It is especially prepared for the devil and his angels:

**Rev. 20:10:** *And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.*

How long is this fire prepared for? It is everlasting. There is no hint in Scripture that suggests a redeeming possibility for Satan's angels.

**Col. 2:15:** *Having disarmed principalities and powers, He made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them in it.*

In this text Paul is talking about the work Jesus accomplished on the cross. It says Jesus on the cross, disarmed principalities and powers. Have we seen that phrase before? We talked about the principalities and powers in heaven and on earth. We also talked about the fact that the principalities and power on earth are under the power and authority of Satan. Your homework question was "how did Satan become the god of this world?"

There are two ways of looking at this passage. We can say Jesus is talking about the principalities of just heaven or earth, or we can conclude that He disarmed all authority. Because Paul is talking about the completed accomplishment of the cross, I believe Jesus disarmed all authority. He gained in the cross the right to dismiss the authority of Satan in every realm. It is interesting that Paul says Jesus made a public spectacle of them.

*Prof. Question:* *Does anyone have an idea of what this refers to?*

*Student Response:* *No response.*

*Prof. Response:* *Remember Paul is talking about the cross. Where is the victory? Where is the public demonstration of the authority of God relating to the cross? The text in Genesis says He crushed the head of Satan. What aspect of the work of Christ's death was the head of Satan crushed? His resurrection. This is our hope, our confidence.*

When we read in Scripture about the spiritual realm, we also see that the place of the souls of the believers, before the cross and the resurrection, was Abraham's bosom. Remember the story that Jesus gave about the rich man in Abraham's bosom? A man named Lazarus was there. Who

cried out because he saw Abraham's bosom, and he was separated from that? Lazarus was the servant of the rich man who ate the crumbs from the rich man's table.

Some people say that this a parable of Jesus. But, parables never use proper names. It was Abraham's bosom, and it was Lazarus who was there. There seems to be a clear relationship between Abraham's bosom before the death burial and resurrection of Christ and what Scripture states about Jesus leading captivity captive (Eph. 4:8), which suggests the closing of Abraham's bosom.

I look at it this way; Satan has sought to destroy the power and the authority of God. On earth, Satan began by presenting temptation to Adam and Eve. They fell; consequently they were separated from God spiritually. They were restored and later died a natural death but, even as believers, there was not the completion of entering into the glory of heaven. Rather, there was the blessedness of Abraham's bosom, a place of peace and a place of joy for the soul/spirit of the believing saints. Nevertheless, that's less than being in heaven. That is less than being in the place of the residence of God. Perhaps Satan was saying, "Ha, ha, I gained a little victory here."

But after Christ completed His work on the cross, in His resurrection we are told He led captivity captive, he took the believing souls into His own presence. Do not think that the believers in the OT were deprived of something special. What was Abraham's bosom like, we really don't know. But certainly there was something that was different than the place of the rich man in death because he desired it. Christ delivered those in Abraham's bosom into his presence. In this passage when Paul was talking about the victory and the success of the cross there is no mention of hope for unholy angels or unsaved man.

**Heb. 2:9, 14, 15:** *But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels, for the suffering of death crowned with glory and honor, that He, by the grace of God, might taste death for everyone... Inasmuch then as the children have partaken of flesh and blood, He Himself likewise shared in the same, that through death He might destroy him who had the power*

*of death, that is, the devil, and release those who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage.*

These passages are referring again to the uniqueness of our salvation. We are reminded that the Son of God, in becoming a man, was a little lower than the angels so that He might taste death for everyone. He was the only one who could save humanity. Verse 14 speaks of the fact that because He became flesh and blood for us. He partook of human limitations to provide humanity the means of victory over death.

I want you to see something that is very important. He says that He has the power to destroy him who has the power of death. This refers to Satan. When we talk about the power of death, Jesus said earlier, *“do not fear him who can destroy only body.”* Satan can only kill the body. Therefore, the text says *“fear Him who is able to destroy both body and soul in hell.”* This refers to God.

Now, I have a theological question for you. I want you to think about what the Bible says regarding the authority of Jesus, the incarnate Son, and the authority of God the Father, and then answer this question: Did Satan usurp the authority of death from God or was Satan the just the agent that delivered death for God?

The text declares the second. God alone has the real power of physical death and sternal judgment! It is good to understand this. The Scriptures tell us that our days are determined by God, not by Satan. That God alone is the beginning, and He is the end. No one usurps authority from God. Remember Satan, as powerful as he is, is still a fallen angel. He is still subordinate to God. In his evil state, he is just a tool of God to deliver the earthly consequences of sin being suffering and physical death.

Does this mean that everyone who dies has been killed by Satan? No! But when you look at history, we see the greatest deaths in history have come from war. And war is a part of the principalities and powers trying to secure someone else's property and someone else's power. All of this “consequence” is under the sovereign power of God. Satan has used his limited power to cause death as a tool to bring fear to people. According to verse 15, Satan holds people to bondage to the fear of death.

But, in the cross God delivered people from this fear of death (verse 15). Hallelujah! If we know the Lord Jesus as our Saviour, do we have any reason to fear death? No. It is easy to say that. How many here have actually faced death? A number of you. Here's another question: Was that a prolonged situation or something immediate, like an automobile accident you just escaped? There are differences.

In 2005 I was told by my doctor that I had cancer. It was prostate cancer and that is the #1 cancer killer for men in Canada. For a period of time I was contemplating this would be the way God would call me into His presence. I had to start thinking and planning about my wife and family in regard to my death. I periodically had situations when I came close to death because of accidents or my own foolishness, like most people. God, in His grace, spared me. These situations were brief incidents.

Now I was facing a prolonged situation. For many months the possibility that this cancer would kill me was on my mind. I can say; by the same grace of God, I had great peace and actual anticipation of seeing Jesus. This was not because I was a man of giant faith. No, it was simply because the Spirit of God was ministering in my life the true hope and joy of the cross in my life. What did it mean for me to die? It meant the presence of God. Amen!

I learned that others saw this in my life. My daughter did a marathon to raise money for cancer. This is something people do in America to raise funds, but because I had cancer, she wanted to do something for her Dad. When she was interviewed regarding the marathon run, I was amazed at what she said: "I want to raise money for those who have cancer and do not have the hope that my father has." She said something like "not everyone has the Lord and therefore has the peace I see in my father."

I'm telling you this because this evident hope was God in me. I experienced exactly what God said I would experience; no fear of death. I was not in bondage to death. We have seen in these texts the hope the redeemed have. This is in contrast to the impossibility of the redemption of fallen angels. There is no evidence that in Scripture that angels are re-

deemable. The evidence seems to be the opposite. All the angels of Satan and Satan himself have a place prepared for them in everlasting fire.

From a theological perspective, I can understand this because every angel made the decision to follow Satan themselves. It was a personal choice. In that sense, it was their test of righteousness. This is something we talk about in anthropology. When God created the universe in the six days, He said it was very good. Can God create anything less than perfection? No. He's perfect god, everything He does is perfect. Therefore, man and angels were both created in the state of perfection.

Another name for perfection is righteousness. But there's a difference between God's righteousness and the righteous state of His creation. God, who has no beginning and no end, is the definition of righteousness. He is righteousness. Whatever God created in perfection, or in righteousness, has to be tested to be confirmed in righteousness. There is a necessity for intelligent created beings to choose to be righteous in order to confirmed righteous.

Adam was created perfect. In what we call a "testable righteousness." We call that state, not righteousness, but innocence. Innocence becomes confirmed righteousness with the right choice. The choice is the test. What was Adam's choice? What was his test? God stated it to him: "You can eat everything but the fruit of the tree of knowledge of evil."

*Prof. Question: Did Adam succeed in the test?*

*Student Response: No, he did not.*

*Prof. Response: Therefore, he was confirmed in unrighteousness. Who else was confirmed in unrighteousness?*

*Student Response: Abraham.*

*Prof. Response: Keep going, who else?*

*Student Response: Every human being after Adam because he made the choice for us.*

*Prof. Response: Yes! We are born into this unrighteousness because Adam made the choice for all humanity.*



Now let's review angels. Angels are created beings. Were they created with perfection? Absolutely, God created them, so they had to be perfect. They are created beings; so they also had this state of perfection which we call innocence. They too required a test to confirm it.

What was their test? To follow Satan. What was Satan's test? Submission. He was created the top angel for the purposes of God. He had the choice of submitting or in pride usurping. Did Satan make the right choice? No. Did he make the choice for all the other angels to follow him? No! Every angel made their own choice.

Because every angel made their own choice in their personal state of innocence, they each were confirmed in their respective choice. Some chose loyalty to God and were confirmed forever in their holiness, others chose loyalty to Satan (including himself) and were confirmed forever in their wickedness. There is no opportunity for redemption for them, they made their choice.

Let me repeat this important point! The angels of God made the correct choice, they are everlastingly confirmed in their righteousness, they will never make a choice other than in righteousness. But, the angels of Satan made the wrong choice, they failed the test. Each one made that choice personally. They made the choice while in a state of perfection, so there is no opportunity for them. They are confirmed in their unrighteousness.

The beauty of our salvation is that Jesus made the right choice for us. Adam confirmed humanity in unrighteousness. When we are born, we have no choice, we are not perfect. We are "born in sin and shaped in iniquity." But, because one man (Adam) determined that for all humanity, one man (Jesus) offers by grace, the choice, to believe in Him as Saviour. This was God's plan. Therefore, Jesus is called the second Adam. Does that help you understand why man is redeemable, but why the demons are not redeemable?

*Student Response: This is very interesting, thank you. I was confused with those things, but now it is very clear.*

*Prof. Response: That is what school is about.*

*Student Question: You were talking about the second Adam. The first Adam made the choice for everybody, does the second Adam have the choice to make a second choice.*

*Prof. Response: So your question is: Could Jesus have made the wrong choice?*

*Student Response: Yes.*

*Prof. Response: When we do our course in Christology, we realize Jesus was fully man and perfect man, but he was also fully God. That's the difference between Adam and Christ. So as completely a man, could he be tested or tempted? Yes. The Bible tells us this, He was tempted in every point just as every man. As a man He had the same framework as you and I, he needed to eat, to sleep. Satan said to him, look if you just bow to me, I will give you all these nations and you won't have to go through the cross to have all nations.*

*Was that a temptation for this man named Jesus? Yes. He knew what the cross was going to be. The cross for Jesus was more than physical death. It was going to be the separation of Himself from God and that had never existed in the life of God who is from eternity to eternity.*

*Was the cross an easy thing for Jesus to face? No. We see Him in the garden praying and His sweat was mixed with His blood. There is a medical term for that, an actual point when someone is under extreme stress. His purpose was to become the King of the world. So there is Satan saying, just bow to me, and you don't have to go to the cross. A temptation, oh yes. Jesus was tempted in every point but without sin.*

*Jesus always made the right choice. Why? Because He is God. The same God who created the world in perfection because God can do nothing that is not perfect. The perfection of Jesus as fully God existed not just as a decision at the point of the cross, but all through His life. He came into this world as perfect man, just as Adam came into this world as perfect man. Jesus was more than perfect man; He was perfect God.*

*He lived a life without sin. He never had a wrong thought. He never spoke a wrong word. He never acted in a wrong way toward any person. I cannot imagine this. If you and I were children living with Jesus as a boy,*

*we would not look at him and see perfection, because we don't know what it looks like. We would accuse Him of in doing the right thing of doing the wrong thing. That's how far from perfection we are. We don't recognize it when we see it. We are told this in John. He came unto His own and His own received Him not.*

*I had a lady from JW cult come to my house. She didn't know my background, so I let her talk to me for a few moments. I made the comment that you should look carefully in your own Bible. John 1:1 in their Bible says, "in the beginning was the Word, and the word was a god." Yet, There are other parts even in their own book where they weren't careful enough where Jesus is claiming to be God. I said, "In your Bible the Spirit of God is a person clearly because the Spirit of God grieves, how can a force grieve?" But she wouldn't believe me.*

*I replied: "Even your own bad translation will show that Jesus is God. No, he was the son of God, just as we are sons of God." I said to her, "In your belief will you be with God in heaven?" I know their teaching. She had to tell me the truth that only 144, 000 will be there. So, I said "What hope are you offering me? If you have no hope yourself, how can I have hope?" The last thing I said was "I feel very sorry for you, because I know I am going to be with God and I know I will be forever in His presence and you are propagating your beliefs and you don't even have hope yourself."*

Let's take a moment at look at two unique worlds that are absolutely opposites. When we examine the two worlds, one promised by God and another promised by Satan, Satan's opposition to God is clear. Make this chart in your own notes someplace. You will not be asked on an exam. Someone read Revelation 21:1.

**Rev. 21:1:** *Now I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away. Also there was no more sea.*

This text tells us that when we come to the end of the millennium, God will establish a "new" heaven and earth. Nevertheless, we do not need to wait for this this newness because it describes life in Christ now. Paul

said: *“If any man be in Christ, he is a new creation...old things are passed away, behold all things are become new.”* The character of the “World of God” is newness, every day is new. But everything in the world of Satan is old. There is nothing new in the realm of Satan.

When we think of God and His world, it is described as new “life.” Jesus said, *“I am come that you might have Life! And that more abundantly.”* Do you believe this? Is this something you wait for in heaven, or do you enjoy this now? What does Satan offer? Only death. And even in that he is only God’s agent to deliver death. What a sad contrast.

Prof. Question: *What else describes the contrast between the world of God and the world of Satan?*

Student Response: *Light,*

Prof. Response: *Absolutely, that’s the next one. Very good, Earnest. He’s caught on; he knows where we are going from here.*

Satan’s world is a world of darkness. Christians are the light of the world. Christians are called to walk in the light as Jesus walked in the light (1 Jn. 1:7). We are justified (Rom. 3:24), or “declared righteous,” and we are called to work out our own salvation (Php. 2:12) which means to be sanctified or to walk in righteousness. As we stated earlier, a synonym for righteousness is perfection. Are we perfect yet? No.

The epistle of 1 John says if we say we are without sin, we are liars. Nevertheless, with Christ we are progressing in sanctification. But, under the power, influence, and authority of Satan, all is wickedness. When God created the world He said it was good. When Satan took over the keys from Adam, he became the agent of the opposite of good. His deceptively obtained “world” became evil.

Satan is the god of this world. God with a small “g.” You are asked to determine how it became that, and that is your homework for tomorrow.

Having come to Christ, our real world is new, although only yet in a spiritual sense. We are agents of this new world living within the wicked, evil world as Scripture declares:

**Joh. 15:19:** *If you were of the world, the world would love its own. Yet because you are not of the world, but I chose you out of the world, therefore the world hates you.*

We are new creations (2 Cor. 5:17), we are the light (Matt. 5:14), we are to walk in the light (1 Joh. 1:7), we grow in righteousness, we exercise our righteousness by doing good. How does this world view these agents of this world? The text says it hates them.

Prof. Question: *If this world is describing these agents of Christ, what kind of words will they use?*

Student Response: *-Bad. -The same way the students with Jesus looked at Jesus' life: that man is strange. -Those people, they're crazy. -I do not like those people! They make me feel bad. -They tell me that I am not right. -We need to stop these people. -They're not good for this world.*

Prof. Response: *Yes, don't these descriptions sound familiar?*

Jesus said we will bear the same cup He bore. Believers will carry the same cross He carried. Christians are citizens of another world. And, here's the great hope; before God brings His judgement upon this world, He's going to take believers out of it. Then, even before He creates the new heaven and the new earth, He's going to establish for 1000 years, a kingdom where these agents (raised Christians – you and me) are going to rule. The citizens of this world will be characterized by righteousness.

Those who are born naturally during this 1000 year reign are going to be the aliens until saved. Christians are going to be the true citizens. You and I, as part of the church, are going to be in our perfect state, ruling and leading nations in this kingdom with Jesus Christ. Until then we are operating now the way Jesus operated when He first came, in "humiliation." But, when we join Christ in this kingdom we will experience the "exaltation." Therefore, even though we have the privilege of abundant life now, the best is yet to come.

## LECTURE 6

Yesterday, at the conclusion of the class, we said God created our world and put Adam and Eve in it. God commanded Adam and Eve to have dominion over the world, to fill it with humanity and to subdue the vegetation and have dominion over the animals. So in that command, how did God establish authority? He gave it to Adam. He designated it to Adam.

God cannot give away His authority because it is who He is. Adam and Eve were still accountable to God but for the purposes of God, He designated His authority so now Adam and Eve became the king and queen of the earth. He gave them the keys of earth. Then the serpent came along with his deception and causes Adam and Eve to fall. Because he deceived them into sin, Satan became the father of sin and “god” of this world.

Because of this deception, Adam and Eve’s fell into sin and are now subject to Satan. When Adam and Eve followed Satan’s word and sinned, they gave the keys of earth to Satan. At that moment, Adam and Eve fell under Satan’s control, wherein all humanity has walked:

**Eph. 2:2:** *...in which you once walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit who now works in the sons of disobedience.*

We see how Satan became “*the prince of the power of the air;*” the god of this world, by usurping the authority of Adam and Eve. When Adam and Eve fell into sin, their fellowship with God was broken and now all humanity is under the power of Satan.

Yet, we cannot allow ourselves to become foolish and think that Satan is an equal force against God. Satan never found himself above God’s authority. Never! God still had sovereign authority over Adam and Eve and even over Satan. The new age movement that swept America and was evidenced in theatres and movies presents this inaccurate dualism. The good side and the bad side, the dark side and the light side are equally in battle. “Star Wars” was a popular movie series presenting a kind of Buddhist phi-

osophy of the good side and the bad side battling with the outcome in jeopardy. This is not true.

*Student Question: There is a war between Satan and the world. Is that not the truth?*

*Prof. Response: We talk about spiritual warfare because the Bible teaches about it.*

**Eph. 6:12:** *For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this age, against spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places*

Believers do not wrestle against “flesh and blood” but against the “spiritual forces.” Christians, in whatever state of world peace or conflict, are always in a spiritual warfare against Satan and demons, the enemies of God. According to Ephesians 2 all humanity is under Satan’s dominion and are also the enemies of God. From the Christian perspective, it is also a struggle in our own bodies, to determine whether to walk with God or walk in the flesh.

From Satan’s perspective, he seeks to destroy the people of God who have come to Christ. Satan has two jobs. To keep the people who do not believe in God from believing in God, and to attack the people who do believe in God so they will turn from God. When Jesus Christ became man, Satan sought to put Him under his power. As well, when we talk about spiritual warfare, Christians also struggle with the flesh, as Paul argues in Romans 6-8.

God’s people have a spiritual struggle with Satan and his demons and with his power over humanity. We have a struggle, but God has not struggled. We know that the angels were involved in this struggle and made their choices as individual beings. Nevertheless, this spiritual warfare is a one-sided war. The work of the cross brought victory available for man, but not for God. God never needed to restore the victory for He never lost the battle!

In the cross, man has the potential for redemption and the whole world will be made new through Christ one day. But, God is never in a position to be redeemed. Yes, there is spiritual warfare within humanity, but God's war is complete, the outcome was never in jeopardy. God for all eternity, past, present, and future will always reign supreme!

*Student Response: I understand now. My problem was with the word "fight." God is not fighting.*

*Prof. Response: No, that is not true, God is fighting. He sends His angels. But, there is no danger of Him losing. The fight for Him is a forgone conclusion. The cross settled the battle for humanity, but God never lost control, nor was He ever threatened by Satan. Satan is just a puppet for God's eternal purposes.*

## **V. The Mission of Angels**

We looked at the types of angels and the character of angels. We have been able to see into the invisible world of this spirit world. Now we want to look their mission. What is the job of angels? We just point out the particular missions usually with a single text in your notes. You can review the other texts in your own time.

In talking about this, I limit their responsibilities to how they relate to humanity. We could talk about the seraphim and the cherubim whose responsibility is to circle God and cry "holy, holy." We do not know all that is going on in heaven between the angels and the demons. That is beyond us. God has not chosen to give us all that information.

Nevertheless, God has created these angels to be His servants. The word "angel" means "messenger." In the first part of our class we looked at texts to be sure that we understood the context to determine what was being said. For the purpose of this section, we are just going to look at the ministry statements regarding angels.

A. Angels minister to believers

**Heb. 1:14:** *Are they not all ministering spirits sent forth to minister for those who will inherit salvation?*



Here we are told angels minister to believers, to those who will be saved. It appears that angels have some ministry to all God's people, the elect even before they come to the decision of salvation. This could answer the question we had earlier about children having their own angels. I don't know whether we can say every child has an angel beside them. I don't think that's what the text says, but it does not deny it. Clearly Hebrews 1:14 tells us angels minister to those who will inherit salvation. In French is it clear; angels minister for all who will believe?

**Matt. 18:10:** *Take heed that you do not despise one of these little ones, for I say to you that in heaven their angels always see the face of My Father who is in heaven.*

This is the passage speaking of children, the "little ones," where "their angels" always behold the face of God. For this reason we are told not to "despise" children. Despise is the translation of the Greek word *καταφρονέω* (*kataphronéō*) meaning "to hold in contempt, to think lightly of."

The disciples were reminded of the value the Lord places on **these little ones** (*mikrōn toutōn*; cf. 18:6, 14). Children are important to God. It may be God has entrusted the care of little children to a specific group of His angelic beings (**their angels**) who are in constant touch with the heavenly **Father** (Ps.91:11; Acts 12:15).<sup>6</sup>

B. Angels protect God's people

**2 Kings 6:17:** *And Elisha prayed, and said, "LORD, I pray, open his eyes that he may see." Then the LORD opened the eyes of the young man, and he saw. And behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire all around Elisha.*

Elisha prayed, and his servant's eyes were opened to see the host of angels protecting them. I read the story of a missionary couple who were serving in Brazil, I believe. They were threatened by the tribal people in

---

<sup>6</sup> Barbieri, L. A., & Jr. (1985). Matthew. In J. F. Walvoord & R. B. Zuck (Eds.), *The Bible Knowledge Commentary: An Exposition of the Scriptures* (J. F. Walvoord & R. B. Zuck, Ed.) (Mt 18:7–11). Wheaton, IL: Victor Books.

the local village. The tribal people surrounded the abode of the couple who were there to share Christ. The missionaries were on their knees praying and all of a sudden the natives left. The missionary couple continued to share Christ in that village and many came to know Christ as their Saviour. One of the men that accepted Christ later told the missionaries when they came to attack, there were men all around the house protecting them. The missionaries realized these were not men, but angels that God allowed the natives see. God continues to use angels to protect His people, whether visible or not.

#### C. Angels guide God's people

**Acts 8:26:** *Now an angel of the Lord spoke to Philip, saying, "Arise and go toward the south along the road which goes down from Jerusalem to Gaza."*

In Acts 8 an angel of the Lord guided the apostle as they were coming out of prison or going to a home. We see this in Scripture in a several places. I want to emphasize the fact that it does not say "the Angel of the Lord;" but "an angel of the Lord." There is a difference from the OT when it was the Lord Himself.

#### D. Angels execute God's judgement

**Acts 12:23:** *Then immediately an angel of the Lord struck him, because he did not give glory to God. And he was eaten by worms and died.*

Here we see that Herod was a very rebellious and proud individual. God judged Herod by sending an angel to strike him. He was filled with worms and he died.

#### E. Angels will accompany Christ at His coming.

**Matt. 25:31:** *When the Son of Man comes in His glory, and all the holy angels with Him, then He will sit on the throne of His glory.*

In this text God's angels accompany Christ at His coming. We read this in Thessalonians and in Revelation also. Angels have a role even in the second coming of Christ. Remember, when I talk about the second coming of Christ, it is when he descends as the Messiah, not the Rapture. The second coming of Christ to earth involves His Exaltation, where the whole world sees Him descend. He comes as King with His soldiers with Him.

F. Angels will take believers to heaven.

**Luke 16:22:** *So it was that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels to Abraham's bosom.*

This is the story of Lazarus in Abraham's bosom. Jesus is speaking of a man names Lazarus, using his proper name. It is my view, when proper names are used, it is not a parable but an actual event. We see here that when the beggar died, angels carried him into Abraham's bosom. From this true story we can see that angels, at least on this occasion, take believers to heaven. Angels can accompany believers as they go into the presence of God at death.

G. Angels provide for God's people.

**1 Kings 19:5, 7:** *Then as he lay and slept under a broom tree, suddenly an angel touched him, and said to him, "Arise and eat." ... And the angel of the LORD came back the second time, and touched him,*

In this passage we see Elijah strengthened by an angel. Notice it says "the angel of the Lord." Whether this was God Himself, or an angel, it is a matter of interpretation, but in other OT places this term refers to God Himself.

**Psalms 78:23-25:** *He had commanded the clouds above, And opened the doors of heaven... Men ate angels' food;*

It says in this passage that when Israel was fed in the wilderness they ate angels' food. He is speaking of the manna. Does that term mean the food that angels eat, or food that angels supplied? Think that through for yourselves.

Indeed, with these few texts we see that angels have various ministries toward men. Their job is not limited to the people of God, they sometimes bring judgment to the unsaved, like Herod and the people of Sodom and Gomorrah. When we just look at the angels of the spiritual world, we see a comprehensive picture. God has given us much information about this world that we cannot see or measure.

H. Angels strengthen God's people

**Acts 5:19-20:** *But at night an angel of the Lord opened the prison doors and brought them out, and said, "Go, stand in the temple and speak to the people all the words of this life."*

**Acts 27:22-23:** *And now I urge you to take heart, for there will be no loss of life among you, but only of the ship. "For there stood by me this night an angel of the God to whom I belong and whom I serve."*

Each of these texts refer to situations where God's servants, Peter then Paul, were weakened by circumstances and an angel delivered them and strengthened them to carry on in God's work.

I. Angels are agents in answering prayer

**Acts 12:5, 7:** *Peter was therefore kept in prison, but constant prayer was offered to God for him by the church... Now behold, an angel of the Lord stood by him, and a light shone in the prison; and he struck Peter on the side and raised him up, saying, "Arise quickly!" And his chains fell off his hands.*

In this final text an angel delivered Peter from prison as an answer to the prayers of the church. This angel led Peter out of prison to the home where they were praying for him.

There are a few passages of Scripture concerning angels that are very much misunderstood. We want to look at these as well. Before proceeding, I want to give you your homework due tomorrow. We know angels were created in the first week. Here's my homework question: What day were the angels created? I want to help you. The answer is found in Job 38. Think through the text because the answer is not immediately obvious.

## **THE SONS OF GOD -- MEN OR ANGELS?**

### **I. Introduction**

There has been much discussion regarding the "Sons of God" in Genesis 6. One view says that these are angels which cohabited with women. The other view says that these are godly men which intermarried with ungodly women. Both interpretations cannot be right. Here are the reasons why "sons of God" cannot refer to angels but must refer to men. Examine the

evidence carefully, letting the Holy Spirit, who has promised to guide us into all truth, lead us to a scriptural answer.

## **II. Why "sons of God" in Genesis 6:2 cannot refer to angels**

**Gen. 6:2:** *the sons of God saw the daughters of men, that they were beautiful; and they took wives for themselves of all whom they chose.*

The problem in the text comes from vs. 2 where it states, “The sons of God saw the daughters of man and took wives for themselves.” It has been taught by many that the sons of God are angels who co-habit with women. Have you heard of this? Have you preached this?

I want to say up front this is impossible! It cannot be angels co-habiting with women, even though sometimes in Scripture the term “sons of God” does refer to angels. The book of Job for example; every time you see the term “sons of God” it refers to angels. But this is not the case with the phrase all the way through the Scriptures. In your notes, I have given you a list of answers that we will walk through so you can fill in the blanks, as I explain why angels cannot co-habit with women.

A. The context refers to the godly line of Seth and the ungodly line of Cain.

The emphasis of the beginning chapters of the book of Genesis is clearly outlining the godly line, the people who are believers, and the ungodly line. Adam and Eve honestly had many children but the Scriptures indicate only Cain and Abel, probably the first two sons. After Cain killed Abel and Abel’s offering was accepted and Cain’s offering was not accepted; he did not follow God.

So, the book of Genesis follows the line of Cain and tells us the path that his children went which basically were an ungodly people. It also gives us the line of Seth who replaced Abel as a godly son of Adam and Eve and their line and how his generations after him continue to follow God. We have this time period from Adam and Eve with the line of Cain and the line of Abel. This was replaced by Seth. So, from here until the flood in Genesis 6, the Bible traces the two different lines, the line of Seth and the line of Cain along with their activity.

There is clearly a difference between the followers of God and those who do not follow God. It seems very clear that the sons of God were the

believers of the line of Seth. Yet, they chose to marry the ungodly line of Cain. These improper marriages between believers and unbelievers were a problem throughout the OT, and it carries through to the NT. Here believers are specifically commanded to marry only Christians. Believers should not marry unbelievers. That is the argument in the Genesis 6 context.

B. Moses uses only the term “angel” for the spirit beings.

Moses mentions angels fifteen times in Genesis and calls them angels. He calls them by no other term. It is very important for us, when studying Scripture, to identify the nature of the language that each author uses. One of the reasons we have biblical theology alongside systematic theology is to help us identify the character of books as well as the whole. Part of the job of interpreters, pastors, is to ensure we know these things. In the book of Job every time the term “sons of God” is used, it is referring to angels.

We can see by the use of the terminology that “the sons of God” cannot all of a sudden refer to angels. This is not consistent with the language of the book of Genesis.

*Student Question: When you talk about systematic theology, could you go back and explain.*

*Prof. Response: The word “theology” of course, primarily means the study of God; “theo” and then “ology.” “theos” is God/ but we use the term in the general to say all the doctrines of God. Historically the church has accumulated all that each book of the Bible says about each of the major doctrines, there are ten major doctrines, there are many other doctrines.*

*For example in this study, we have taken most of the texts of the Scriptures that speak about angels, most but not all of them. We’ve taken these from all of the Scriptures. Then we look at these texts and we organize it in a systematic way. So for example, when we were talking about the angels that provided for God’s people, we looked at Psalms and 1 Kings. We grouped the verses that say the same things together and that is a systematic way of presenting the truth of what the Bible says about angels.*

*Do you understand Systematic Theology? We do that with all the doctrines, the doctrine of Christ, the doctrine of the Holy Spirit, the doctrine of man, etc.*

*Biblical theology examines each book of the Bible in terms of its own theology. We would take the book of Genesis and ask “what does Genesis say about God,” “what does Genesis say about salvation,” “what does Genesis say about man.” The purpose of this is to identify specific language and terms within each book. And, to understand and appreciate progressive revelation in each theology.*

*For example, the doctrine of salvation; when we look at it chronologically from the point of view of how God gave us each book in human history and certain periods of time, we could see the progression of understanding of salvation. Usually Systematic Theology is presented in lower levels of theological education and Biblical Theology in the higher levels. Does that help? There are other ways to organize theology as well, but they are not used as much as these two.*

C. God’s judgment is directed against men and not against angels.

When God determines to destroy the world with the flood it is against man, not the angels. There are examples in your notes; chapter 6:3 *God’s Spirit will not always strive with man.* 6:5 *God saw the wickedness of man was great.* 6:6 *it repented the Lord he had made man.* 6:7 *I will destroy man, both man and beast.*

If the sons of god were angels marrying women, why wouldn’t God bring judgment upon angels as well as humanity? It would be inconsistent and unjust. God could not be either!

D. The sin that God is against involves the godly line taking wives from the ungodly line.

The sin is not only the cohabitation with angels. It was also the sin of God’s people marrying outside the nation which God later commanded against:

**Deut. 7:3:** *Nor shall you make marriages with them. You shall not give your daughter to their son, nor take their daughter for your son.*

#1 There was a breakdown of separation.

In this text, under the law of Moses, God did not approve of the Israelites marrying among the other ungodly nations.

*Student Question: There are two words in French which mean almost the same thing: “rapture” or “separation.” Your notes say a breakdown in separation, which can mean rapture as well. This is confusing, can you help?*

*Prof. Response: I think we need to understand what we are looking at here. In Genesis 6, the principle of God’s people to stay holy within their families is declared. Israel was in violation of this. Remember the emphasis of Genesis is the line of Seth, the godly line and the line of Cain and the ungodly line. The problem here is that God could not tolerate this sin anymore because the godly line and the ungodly line had very little distinction through marrying together.*

So what did God do? He selected a godly line to begin humanity again: **Gen. 6:8:** *But Noah found grace in the eyes of the LORD.*

God took Noah’s family within the context of the godly line and started all over again. So the question has to be raised: If God did not give the principle of separation until the law of Moses (Deut. 6), why would they be held responsible?

The answer to that is: We don’t know all the information that God gave His people because all of it is not recorded. For example, the offering that Cain gave was unacceptable, but the offering Abel gave was acceptable. There are differences of opinion of why God judged Cain and did not accept his offering. Some would say that God saw their hearts, and that is what he was measuring.

It is my opinion that when God covered Adam and Even with the skin of an animal, he was teaching them the necessity of blood to cover sin. In Genesis 3:15 we have a hint of the necessity of the sacrifice in that “the seed of the woman would be bruised and the seed of the serpent would be crushed.” This is a prediction of the gospel of Jesus: His death and resurrection to provide the necessary sacrifice for salvation.



It is my opinion that God gave Adam and Eve the information necessary, and they taught their children that blood sacrifice was necessary but Cain did not follow their teaching. Similarly, the line of Seth and the line of Cain represent the people who believed and followed God, and those who did not believe and follow God. I believe that God gave the information that they should marry only among their own people.

When we come to Gen. 6 God says “enough is enough,” He chose one family of the line of Seth to start again. I want you to see that it was grace that determined the selection of Noah. That is the consistency of salvation for all men. It is founded on the grace of God, not on any merits of man. Noah was a believing man, but he was not a perfect man. We see that in his drunkenness and in his children’s sin.

There is a judgement of God toward the sons of God. They were believers, yet they married the daughters of men, the unbelieving women. The distinction that God followed in the listed genealogy became vague and indistinct in the line of Seth and the line of Cain, so God started again with Noah.

#2 There was polygamy in the line of Cain.

**Gen. 4:19:** *Then Lamech took for himself two wives: the name of one was Adah, and the name of the second was Zillah.*

This ungodly line were not satisfied with the principle of one man and one woman, these men took on multiple wives. In addition, within the line of Cain, you see murder; Cain murdered his own brother (Gen. 4:8).

E. The term, the “sons of God” never refers to fallen angels.

It does refer to angels in three passages of Scripture in Job. However, it never refers to fallen angels in Job. In fact, Satan is distinguished from the sons of God in the book of Job. So if these sons of God were supposed to be angels in Genesis 6, they must have been fallen angels, not following the will of God. It would never be appropriate to call these fallen angels “sons of God.”

F. The term “sons of God” or something equivalent to that, does apply to godly men, not angels.

This is evident in Deut. 14, Hosea 1:10., and in Ps. 82:6. When we get into the NT, God’s people are called the children of God 9 times, and the

sons of God 6 times. (The next blank in your notes is: the NT refers to believers as “sons” Rom. 8:14, 19; II Cor. 6:18; Gal. 4:6,7; Heb. 12:6,7; Rev. 21:7). There is a consistent pattern in Scripture where “sons of God” refer to godly people or godly men. Therefore, in the context of Genesis 6 it does not fit that these sons of God were angels.

#### G. Angels are created different from man

Let’s go back and think of what we’ve learned about angels.

1. We discovered that angels are sexless and do not marry (Matt. 22:30). Even though angels always appeared in the masculine, Jesus said they do not procreate. How could a being that is spirit, and that does not reproduce, procreate with women. It doesn’t even make scientific sense.
2. Angels are a fixed number. They are innumerable but were all created on one of the days of creation week.
3. Angels are a different kind than man. Although everything God created on earth reproduces after its kind, angels were not created to dwell on earth and are not after the “kind” of man.
4. In order for angels to procreate with women, they would have to take on human bodies. When they appeared, they appeared like men, but they didn’t take on human bodies. They would also have to take on sexuality. They would have to somehow become humankind in order for them to genetically be able to multiply.
5. There is no Scripture evidence that angels have the ability to take on human bodies and become human kind.

What we are saying here, that even if angels could somehow become material, if they could somehow make themselves become physical, that still wouldn’t change their kind. That creation principle; “after its kind” sets the limits for procreation so that procreation is only after its own kind. Even within the animal kingdom where there are similarities as the lion and the tiger, when they mate the capacity for the offspring to reproduce is gone.

6. Some claim that the unholy marriages of Genesis 6 involved demonic possession of humans; the sons of God are people who have been possessed by demons. Even if that were the situation, the offspring would be ordinary kids.

## LECTURE 7

We concluded our last class by beginning to look at Genesis 6, that very controversial passage. There are those who believe God judged the world with the flood because angels came down and co-habited with women and created a super race. This is contrary to everything the Bible teaches about angels. In our notes we looked at the context itself to indicate it is very inconsistent for God to judge only man if this is the truth.

We saw that in the context the issue was between the line of Seth, the godly line and the line of Cain, the ungodly line. We saw also that the “sons of God” is usually the reference for godly people in the Bible, except for Job. Then after looking after that specific context of Gen. 6 we to think about what the Bible says about angels. We saw they were sexless, a fixed number at creation, and they were a different kind.

We concluded there is no evidence in Scriptures that angels are able to take on a human body, or for that matter, any other body, even though they may appear to be that way. Our last statement was “we know demons can possess people,” but this could not be the case in Genesis 6 because a possessed body can still reproduce after its own kind.

H. The presence of the Nephilim.

**Gen. 6:4:** *There were giants on the earth in those days, and also afterward, when the sons of God came in to the daughters of men and they bore children to them. Those were the mighty men who were of old, men of renown.*

This text indicates that giants (Nephilim) were already on the earth at the time the sons of God came on the scene. Some people teach that when angels came to women the product was the נְפִילִים (*něpîlîm*), the word translated into English as “giants.” A careful look at the text indicates this could not be the case. It says in this very text that the giants were there before the sons of God came to the daughters of men. So this text is not telling us that the product of the sons of God and the daughters of man were nepheline, it tells the opposite of that.

There is evidence in Numbers that the giants mentioned are the sons of Anak:

**Num. 13:33:** *There we saw the giants (the descendants of Anak came from the giants); and we were like grasshoppers in our own sight, and so we were in their sight.*

This was 800 years after the flood. We know that after the flood everyone on the planet came from Noah, so obviously the giants were not the product of the sons of God and the daughters of men. When you look at the history of humanity, there have always been genetic exaggerations in our world. You have in Africa the tribal people called the pygmies. They are a very short people. They are not the product of angels and women. We know there are people in the world who have genetically grown to be very tall. Science has an answer for the genetic exceptions because of this, it can mathematically be figured out.

Emmanuel has the disc to be passed around to give extra information for your notes. One of the files on this is about the nepheline. Another way of translating “nepheline” is not “giants,” but “powerful people.” That could mean politically powerful or economically powerful. This could be the very thing Jesus was speaking about when he said the end times would be like the days of Noah.

Even today, when we look at our world we will see a few people very powerful economically and politically. So in the broad sense of the word “Nephilim,” we have nepheline today. I am not a financial expert, but I have read in the world of finances. Many economists claim that there are between 20 and 30 families in the world who control all the economies in the world. So by the definition of nepheline we could say they are nepheline.

#### I. Jesus and the Days of Noah.

Another gospel text which evidences that the Genesis 6 “sons of God” were not angels is found in Matthew 24 and the parallel passage of Luke 17.

**Lu. 17:26-28:** *And as it was in the days of Noah, so it will be also in the days of the Son of Man: "They ate, they drank, they married wives, they*

were given in marriage, until the day that Noah entered the ark, and the flood came and destroyed them all. "Likewise as it was also in the days of Lot: They ate, they drank, they bought, they sold, they planted, they built;

Luke is clear, the days of Noah involved unholy behaviour among people, just as in the days of Lot, a dozen generations after the flood. The mention of Lot points to the wickedness of Sodom and Gomorrah, which resulted in the destruction of these cities. The flood should have been warning to Lot's generation, as an example of the righteous nature of the Genesis 6 judgement upon the totally wicked world of man.

J. The "angels" view parallels mythology.

We know in Greek mythology, especially many of the Greek heroes, were the product of the gods or angels or spirits in heaven mixing with the humans. Have you heard of Hercules? He was a part of Greek mythology.

*Prof. Question: How many here have gone to university?*

*Student Response: I have.*

*Prof. Response: Did Yes I took this in my studies.*

*Prof. Response: You see, Hercules was like Samson, a strong man. Hercules was a Roman hero and god. He was the Roman equivalent of the Greek divine hero Heracles who was the son of Zeus (Roman equivalent Jupiter) and the mortal Alcmena. In classical mythology, Hercules is famous for his strength and for his numerous far-ranging adventures (such as holding up the world for Atlas). The Romans adapted the Greek hero's iconography and myths for their literature under the name Hercules. If you study Greek mythology you will understand Greek mythology was based on mythology much earlier in history.*

K. The interpretation of 1 Peter 3:18-21; 4:6

There is a passage here that confuses many people.

**1 Peter 3:18-21:** *...Christ... went and preached unto the spirits in prison; Which sometime were disobedient, when once the longsuffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was a preparing, wherein few, that is, eight souls were saved by water.*

**1 Peter 4:6:** ...*For this cause was the gospel preached also to them that are dead, that they might be judged according to men in the flesh, but live according to God in the spirit.*

Because the 1 Peter 3 passage refers back to the days of Noah, some think this is about angels having relationships with women. The proper interpretation is clarified in 1 Peter 4:6 which helps us understand what Peter is talking about in chapter 3. Peter is talking about Noah's world impact while building the ark which lasted for 120 years?

God is telling us that while Noah was building the ark in preparation for the destruction of the world, God was waiting for people to repent. Noah took the opportunity while building the ark to explain to the world why judgement was coming. His warning was a call to repent and return to God. We are told that only eight souls entered the ark. What a sad commentary on humanity that only eight souls repented and turned to God. They were all a part of God's family because they were a part of Noah's family. With all but eight people destroyed of all humanity, Peter tells us in chapter 4 verse 6, that when Christ was in His spirit before His resurrection, He preached the gospel to the host of dead, most of which were from Noah's day.

Do not think that the gospel was given to the spirits of these dead people, lost through the flood, to give them a second chance of salvation. No! That is totally contrary to the Scriptures. But, we are told that this flood as a type or picture of salvation in the same way baptism is, being a testimony of salvation. Therefore, as I put these 2 verses together, my conclusion is this: Millions upon millions of people lost their lives during the flood. Jesus, who had completed the work of salvation, preached to them to justify their destruction. During their life, by the warning of Noah, God gave them the same opportunity to repent as in Jesus day and the apostles day.

Prof. Question: *Could people be saved in Noah's day?*

Student Response: *Yes.*

Prof. Response: *How?*

Student Response: *By believing Noah's preaching and entering the ark.*

*Prof. Response: Yes, by faith in God's provision. I believe because it was such a devastating destruction of humanity justified by God, that He preached that justice to their souls that were in hell.*

Let's fill in the blanks in your notes as we go through the five points under I.

#1 after the death of Christ He went and preached the gospel to those who are dead.

#2 the spirits in prison are not angels, they are the people who died in the flood. Remember, the spirit of those not saved entered into another existence. Their bodies were not there where Christ was preaching, but their soul/spirits were.

#3 the gospel is never presented to angels. We talked about the fact there is no salvation for angels because they individually made their own choices

#4 the gospel was preached in order to judge them according to men in the flesh. These individuals operated within their lifetime in the flesh. Christ was preaching the justification of their annihilation.

#5 These spirits/souls here are of antediluvian men, people before the flood.

Therefore, there is no mention in this passage of marriages or inter-marriages with angels. Now there is much more discussion theologically that can be talked about in terms of this context. But our purpose here is not to talk about every issue that arises theologically from this text. We are only showing you that the text has nothing to do with angels co-habiting with people and producing nepheline.

L. The interpretation of 2 Peter 2

**2 Peter 2:1-6:** *...false prophets ...many will follow their destructive ways ...their judgment has not been idle ...For if God did not spare the angels who sinned ...and did not spare the ancient world, but saved Noah,*

This fisherman named Peter created a lot of trouble. Peter's words were sometimes difficult to take, even as he explained Paul's. Remember that these words are God-breathed; inspired by the God author, not Peter.

In the text verse 4 speaks of God judging angels and verse 5 speaks of God judging the world in Noah's day. Some people say these 2 verses together imply that in Genesis 6 angels cohabited with women. But note the context! It is the context of false teachers. Peter is stating that God will not tolerate false teachers. The last thing he says in verse 1 is "*they bring on themselves destruction.*"

In explaining this, Peter gives three illustrations of the way God has destroyed in the past. He destroyed the evil angels and cast them out of His presence into hell. God destroyed the ancient world because it was wicked and not separated as God intended. We have seen that it was filled with polygamy and murder and all manner of evil things were going on. God destroyed wicked Sodom and Gomorrah, whose sexual perversion was an offense to God.

That's what these three verses are all about. They are illustrations of the way God will not tolerate sin but will judge it. In judging God has removed evil angels and the world in Noah's day, and will remove false teachers if they refuse to fear God and repent. Here are the blanks in your notes:

#1 Peter is dealing with false teachers. He's not talking about the days of Noah.

#2 Peter gives three examples of divine judgment: God's judgement of the angels that rebelled (2:4), God's judgement of the world in Noah's day. (2:5), God's judgement on Sodom and Gomorrah (2:6)

The answer is always in the context. If the only thing you remember from this study is "check the context," you have learned a very valuable lesson.

Peter's illustrations give examples of God's judgment in history. There is no reason to say the judgement of angels happened at the same time as the judgment of people in Noah's day, because we would never say the judgment of the people in Noah's day was the same as the judgement of Sodom and Gomorrah. When Peter was giving his illustrations from the Scriptures, he was giving the judgments as they happened successively. The blank of point 3 in your notes is "successively."



Our conclusion in #4 is: A correct interpretation of the text separates the fall of angels from Noah's time, and we could even add from Sodom and Gomorrah's time. For those who like to use this text to prove Genesis 6 involves angels and woman, Peter's point confirms that the rebellion of angels is not marriage with women in this text.

When we study Satan and demons, we will see the context of the rebellion as the result of the pride of Satan.

*Student Question: Christ will come during the second coming. He will come to judge the world. How can this second coming be similar to the judging of Noah? If Christ judges at the second coming, what already happened with Noah? Is the judgement according to the time of Noah, a different kind of judgment.*

*Prof. Response: This is not the topic of our class now, but the answer is clear. We are told God will not judge the world a second time by water, but by fire. When we study eschatology, we will see there are many kinds of judgment at the end of time.*

#### M. The interpretation of Jude

**Jude 6-7:** *And the angels who did not keep their proper domain, but left their own abode, He has reserved in everlasting chains under darkness for the judgment of the great day; as Sodom and Gomorrah,*

Again we see the idea of angels not keeping their proper domain.

There are people who say: "Aha, these shows the angels left their proper domain and cohabited with women in Genesis 6. The context, evident in verses 3 and 5 indicates otherwise:

**Jude 3-4:** *contend earnestly for the faith ...certain men have crept in unnoticed, who long ago were marked out for this condemnation, ...the Lord, having saved the people out of the land of Egypt, afterward destroyed those who did not believe.*

What Jude is talking about is apostates who have entered into the church. These are not just religious persons that are giving false teaching, these are apostates, wicked people. Jude is warning the apostates of their

judgement from God. He gives various illustrations. In verses 5 God delivered Israel out of Egypt, but after delivering them he destroyed those who did not believe. Jude is illustrating the effect of apostasy: They were delivered, but they did not believe, so God judged them.

Jude's second example in verse 6 is angels who were in the presence of God and left their domain. God judged them. In verse 7 Jude gives another illustration; Sodom and Gomorrah. The words "*who in like manner*" refers not to the angels, but these two cities and "*the cities around them.*" When God sent fire down, it was to the entire valley not just the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah. How far did Lot have to run? Was Lot safe as soon as he stepped out of the city of Sodom? No. God destroyed the whole plain. Lot had to escape that whole area.

Jude continues in verse 8 and 9, contrasting the willful disobedience of "*these dreamers defiled the flesh*" to Michael the archangel who would not even bring any "reviling accusation" against the devil. There is illustration after illustration of God's judgements on evil in the book of Jude. The general principle seems to be that God blesses the faithful, and God gives opportunity for repentance even after that people turn away from God or turn against God. This in itself is the definition of apostasy. Jude gives different illustrations of judgement from the ones Peter uses, but the same principle are evident.

In the whole Jude context, the text deals with the outpouring of God's wrath. Jude gives illustrations of the way God sends His wrath to deal with all wickedness in this passage. In case you missed them, the blanks in your notes are as follows:

#1 This passage also deals with the outpouring of God's wrath, not with similarity of sin.

#2 In verse 5, God judged them that believed not.

#3 In verse 6, God judged the angels because of their rebellion against Him.

#4 In verse 7, God judged Sodom and Gomorrah because of their sin.

#5 The phrase "in like manner" in verse 7 does not refer to angels but to the surrounding cities which had followed Sodom and Gomorrah in their sin.

# 6 Even if these verses could be tied together, the sin alluded to in Genesis 6 was not the sodomy of sex between two different species.

N. Where did the angel theory come from?

There are four points in your notes tracing this theory of angels cohabiting with women:

#1 About 200 B.C. there appeared the "pseudepigrapha" writings. These were spurious and never recognized as canon.

#2 One of these texts, the book of Enoch first mentions this idea of sinning angels associated with Genesis 6.

#3 The author probably got his idea from pagan the popular mythology of that time; of gods coming to earth and indulging in sexual perversions.

#4 The book of Enoch has many fanciful and far-fetched extravagances. It even says that there were 200 angels who engaged in the sexual act with women.

The Book of Enoch adds spurious information about angels and clearly contradicts the Scripture proof cited above that Genesis 6 makes no reference to angels cohabiting with women.

This concludes our "Angelology" study. Now there is still much more in the Scriptures to study, this is just an introduction. I hope that some of you will choose to do your paper on angels, but some may choose to do it in the area of demonology.

*Student Question: Will there be an exam relating to angels?*

*Prof. Response: At the final day of our classes, you will have a quiz on angelology, as well as on demonology.*

*Student Question: How do angels serve God now?*

*Prof. Response: Earlier in our class we looked at Heb. 1:14: "Are they not all ministering spirits sent forth to minister for those who will inherit salvation?"*

*Be encouraged that according to our study, angels are assigned to keep us safe. But do not be like the pastor who was late to preach and was driving his car very fast. His wife was afraid they would have a severe accident. His wife said: "Please slow down, don't go so fast." He said: "Don't worry, my guardian angel will keep us safe."*

*Guardian angels will not protect us in our own stupidity. We don't know exactly what they do; but we do know that God supervises us, His angels minister to us, we have the Spirit of God within us, we are blessed in so many ways.*

*Student Question:* In Genesis 6 it says after the children of God came to the children of the men, why is the word "after" a problem of translation.

*Prof. Response:* What verse are you looking at?

*Student Response:* You said from verse 4 –

*Prof. Response:* *There were giants on the earth in those days, and also afterward, when the sons of God came in to the daughters of men.*

*My point was: The giants were not the product of the "sons of God" coming to the "daughter of men." These Nephilim were on the earth before and after this unholy union of believers marrying unbelievers. The text states that this unholy union also produced mighty men. The word used here is גִּבּוֹר (gibbor), meaning strong, brave men.*

*Whether both the "Nephilim" (giants) and the "Gibbor" (mighty men) were wicked, overpowering men or not is unclear. Nevertheless, the phrase "in those days, and also afterward" suggests that a time of rebellion and wickedness persisted, meriting God's justified judgment of removal, Noah's family being the exception.*

*Student Response:* *This study open my eyes. I can categorize angels into those who stayed with God, and those who rebelled against God. Also for the kind of protection they give especially to babies who may survive crashes when everyone else dies.*

*Prof. Response:* *Speculation may be interesting preaching, but it is not necessarily the truth. When a miracle like this takes place, we must be careful, even the angels desire that God receive the glory.*

*There is a TV program that highlighted angels and their blessings called "Touched by an Angel." It has a trio of angels who travel the Earth, inspiring people at crossroads in their lives to turn to God. The people being assisted have no idea that their benefactors are angels, of course.*

*But when the person's issue has been dealt with, the angels reveal themselves in a halo of light and reassure their charges that God loves them. There was no glory to God. We thank God for the ministry of angels even though we don't see them, but God gets the glory. Remember, it is an invisible world for a purpose.*

## SATANOLOGY

### Introduction

I remember when I was a pastor and I was preaching on the description of Satan, a lady in our church came to me and said, "you should not preach about this because Satan will attack you." She had read one of Tim LaHaye and Jerry B. Jenkins' books "Left Behind" that were made into a movie. The movie portrayed the power of demons and Satan as almost equal opponents with God. It is very unbiblical. The book portrays angels sitting on top of a building waiting for church to be dismissed. When the people come out of church, the demons jump down and abuse these Christians. This does not represent Bible truth.

As we start studying the doctrine of Satan and demons, we will see they are enemies of God and God's people. We will discover the evil nature of demons and Satan and their persuasive power. But, we have a truth we need to hold to and remember. "*You are of God, little children, and have overcome them, because He who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.*" (1 John 4:4).

God has given us information to understand and be wise with. When you are in warfare, it is good to know your enemy. But, as Christ said: "*And do not fear those who kill the body but cannot kill the soul. But ra-*

ther fear Him who is able to destroy both soul and body in hell” (Mt. 10:28).

In America we minimize, almost dismiss, the demonic world of Satan. There are theologians who with reform teaching suggest that Satan and demons are bound during this church age. Therefore, they have no power over man or influence over Christians. But this is not true. Satan and his demons are a powerful force. Their evil activity is very prominent both in America and Africa.

Lewis Chafer gives this insightful introduction to Satanology:

Belief in the malign influence of evil spirits antedates the Bible and extends to regions into which the Bible has never penetrated. Plutarch, states: “It was a very ancient opinion, that there are certain wicked and malignant demons, who envy good men, and endeavour to hinder them in the pursuit of virtue, lest they should be partakers at least of greater happiness than they enjoy” (*de Defect. Orac.*, p. 431, tom. 2, Edit. Paris, 1624, cited by Cooke, *Christian Theology*, p. 628). The devil worship of Africa, Burma, Ceylon, Persia, and Chaldea is a development which is evidently a perversion of the earlier divine revelation at the beginning of the race. *The International Standard Bible Encyclopaedia* states: “There are, no doubt, serious difficulties in the way of accepting the doctrine of a personal, superhuman, evil power as Satan is described to be. It is doubtful, however, whether these difficulties may not be due, at least in part, to a misunderstanding of the doctrine and certain of its implications. In addition, it must be acknowledged, that whatever difficulties there may be in the teaching, they are exaggerated and, at the same time, not fairly met by the vague and irrational skepticism which denies without investigation. There are difficulties involved in any view of the world. To say the least, some problems are met by the view of a superhuman, evil world-power” (IV, 2695).

As fully as of any person in the Bible, every element of personality is predicated of Satan. By the contriving method which would deprive Satan of personality, the Lord Himself and the Holy Spirit could also be thus deprived, and by such torturing of the Bible that Book becomes

one adapted only to mislead those who read it. The world strangely retains the Biblical terminology relative to Satan, though every vestige of that terminology is emptied of its true meaning. Without reference to revelation, the world has imagined a grotesque being, fitted with strange trappings, who has been made the central character in fiction and theatrical performances and then, being convinced that no such a being as they portray exists, they have consigned the whole body of revealed truth to the limbo of myths of a bygone age. Unfortunately, the real being set forth in the Bible is not dismissed by such puerile and wicked disregard of God's solemn truth. There is no want of evidence for the personality either of Satan or the demons. The record of their doings, like their destiny, forms the darkest pages of the Word of God. The lake of fire is prepared, not for men, but "for the devil and his angels" (Matt. 25:41). Characters of fiction and metaphors are not judged by the death of Christ nor are they consigned to the lake of fire.<sup>7</sup>

### THE CAREER OF SATAN

#### I. SATAN'S CREATION, ORIGINAL ESTATE, AND FALL

##### A. He was a created being

There are two or three major passages that give us information about Satan.

**Ex. 20:11:** *For in six days the LORD made the heavens and the earth, the sea, and all that is in them,*

Here we are told that everything in the heavens and in earth was created in six days. Therefore both the visible and invisible, the physical and spiritual aspects of the universe were created.

**Ez. 28:13:** *You were in Eden, the garden of God; Every precious stone was your covering ...The workmanship of your timbrels and pipes Was prepared for you on the day you were created.*

Ezekiel takes up a song of remorse for the King of Tyre. It is very apparent that in this context, the King of Tyre was possessed or controlled by Satan. This harmonizes with what we learned about "not wrestling against

---

<sup>7</sup> From Systematic Theology by Lewis Sperry Chafer.

flesh and blood... but against the rulers of darkness of this world.” Although Ezekiel is talking about the King of Tyre, he is really talking about the one who is empowering the king to do evil.

#### B. He was an exalted angel

You can see from the full text, this is a reference to Satan because the King of Tyre could not have been in the Garden of Eden, nor in the “perfect in beauty” described. We are given more information about this angel described by Ezekiel: He was created, and he was in the garden of Eden (vs. 13).

1. He had beauty and a great intellectual capacity (vs. 12,13)

**Ez. 28:12:** *You were the seal of perfection, Full of wisdom and perfect in beauty.*

2. He had a high position (vs 14) Isaiah 6:1

**Ez. 28:14, 15:** *You were the anointed cherub who covers; I established you; You were on the holy mountain of God; You walked back and forth in the midst of fiery stones. You were perfect in your ways from the day you were created,*

Satan was an exalted angel as the “anointed cherub” (vs. 14). He was “perfect in his ways” (vs. 15). The text suggests he was decorated with precious stones (vs. 13), which was similar to the clothing of high priest of the OT. We have to look at this from the perspective of the symbolism being used. How can a spirit being be decorated with physical stones? We go back and look at how stones were used in Scripture and the kind of symbolism this represents.

In Exodus 28 the high priest’s breast plate has the unique stones on it. They were symbols of divine grace given to God’s people administered by the priest. They were used in decision making and to give guidance to Israel. When we come to the New Jerusalem, a part of the New Heaven and the New Earth, we see giant stones as the gates of the city, reflecting the glory of God.

Symbolically, the jewels that were somehow a part of the being of Satan represented his great importance and his glorious appearance. We have already seen there are different types or kinds of angels; seraphim and



cherubim. Perhaps Satan was created as a unique type of angel. He exceeded in beauty and perhaps in intelligence, all other angels. Not only did he have beauty and intelligence, he had the high position of “anointed cherub who covers.”

3. He became a fallen being (vs 15, 16)

**Ez. 28:16, 17:** *By the abundance of your trading You became filled with violence within, And you sinned; Therefore I cast you as a profane thing Out of the mountain of God; And I destroyed you, O covering cherub, From the midst of the fiery stones. Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty; You corrupted your wisdom for the sake of your splendour; I cast you to the ground, I laid you before kings, That they might gaze at you.*

Was Satan originally one above the throne of God crying out “Holy, Holy, Holy” (Isaiah 6), in this exalted position? We see the unique picture of the ark of the covenant where the angels are over the mercy seat. Does this suggest other exalted angels? All this is speculation. Nevertheless, in Ezekiel 28 we are told that Satan became a fallen angel. There is an interesting phrase here that helps us understand the iniquity that was within him. The last phrase of verse 15 says: “*until iniquity was found in you.*”

Verse 16 states the iniquity came from the abundance of trading. This could be a reference to the King of Tyre’s activity as led by Satan. The word “trading,” although we use it in the area of merchandising, also has the idea of “trafficking,” or “travelling about.” This could also suggest a time that Satan’s iniquity involved going out in his own realm, perhaps slandering God, and promoting himself.

You know how people promote themselves in a subtle way. The king could have promoted himself by slandering others to make himself look better. Or, perhaps Satan was travelling around among the other angels, being critical of God in some way. Whether it was the activity of the king under Satan’s control, or Satan’s activity, the end result would be the intent of Satan to cause angels to look at God with less glory and look at himself with more glory.

There was definitely the idea of Satan promoting himself, merchandising himself, or travelling around and exalting himself, in some way. The reason for this is given in vs 17: "*Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty; You corrupted your wisdom for the sake of your splendor.*" Clearly, pride was Satan's downfall. This is confirmed in the NT:

**1Ti. 3:2, 6:** *A bishop then must be ...not a novice, lest being puffed up with pride he fall into the same condemnation as the devil.*

Paul cautions Timothy to recognize appointing a new believer to church because of the danger of falling into pride like Satan did. So, we see that in Ez. 28, although the lament is meant for the King of Tyre, the facts that are mentioned could not exclusively be regarding the king. Therefore, we conclude that Ezekiel speaks of the one who was empowering and possessing the king; Satan. Although his name is not given, verse 14 identifies him as a cherub, an angel who has fallen.

## **II. SATAN'S SIN**

### **A. The 5 "I Wills"**

So far we don't know exactly the name of this individual, we just know this happened. Now go to Isaiah 14, another passage that clearly speaks of this fallen angel. In this passage we have what we call the famous "I wills" of Satan.

From Isaiah 14:4-11 Isaiah is talking about the King of Babylon. I have shared in our Eschatology class the parallels between this passage regarding Satan, and the coming anti-Christ. Nevertheless, as Isaiah here continues on with a proverb against the king of Babylon, he then speaks specifically of this fallen angel that is controlling the King of Babylon even as the King of Tyre was controlled.

**Is. 14:12-15:** *How you are fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! How you are cut down to the ground, You who weakened the nations! For you have said in your heart: "I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will also sit on the mount of the congregation On the farthest sides of the north; I will ascend above the heights of the clouds, I will be like the Most High."*

Now we are given a name to this fallen angel: Lucifer, the son of the morning.

*Student Question: The French Bible translated again “like us.” So does that mean “shining star,” “son of the morning”?*

*Prof. Response: It is an accurate translation, but I really think the idea of the name is clear there. Is it capitalized?*

*Student Response: Yes.*

*Prof. Response: In English we just translate it Lucifer, a transliteration of the way the word sounds. They have given it a meaning rather than transliterate it. It is the prerogative of the translator. The English have done the same with the word “baptism.” There was no word “baptism” until King James had the Bible translated into English. Because the word “baptizo” means immerse: to be submerged under water, but when King James had the Bible translated in the vernacular, in the church of England, baptism was not by immersion, it was by sprinkling. So, the translators did not want to show that the church was practicing the wrong thing. They were not immersing people, so they transliterated the word “baptizo” into baptize and it did not conflict with the practices of the church.*

In this passage we see the condemnation that came because of his pride. You are fallen, you are cut down. Verse 13 begins with the conjunction “for.” The Hebrew conjunction is parallel to the Greek and to the English. I don’t know what the French conjunction is, but it has the idea of cause; translated “because of.” Lucifer fell “because of”! The cause was the five statements of Lucifer’s pride of what he said in his heart. I will list these statements of pride and give you Bible texts related to each statement, but we will not examine these additional texts in class. I suggest you examine them on your own. This will provide you with good preaching material. The five statements of the Lucifer’s pride are:

#1 “I Will Ascend into Heaven” → desire to be in the place of God.  
See Eph. 1:20-21

#2 “I Will Exalt My Throne above the Stars of God” → desire to possess the throne of God. See Is. 6:1

#3 “I Will Sit Also upon the Mount of the Congregation, in the Sides of the North” → desire to replace the government of God. See Col. 2:15

#4 “I Will Ascend above the Heights of the Clouds” → desire to possess the glory of God. See Ex 40:38

#5 “I Will Be Like the Most High” → desire to be possessor of heaven and earth. See Gen. 14:12, 22.

#### B. Why the fall?

When the heart statements of Satan are examined his fall from grace and removal from God’s presence was justified:

1. God has given all of His intelligent created creatures the "right to be wrong."

2. These intelligent created creatures are not robots but rather free moral agents.

C. At this point Lucifer fell and became Satan, the adversary of God.

Lucifer, now called Satan, used his former position of “anointed cherub” to influence other angels in his rebellion:

**Rev. 12:9:** *So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the Devil and Satan ...he was cast to the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.*

**1 Tim. 4:1:** *Now the Spirit expressly says that in latter times some will depart from the faith, giving heed to deceiving spirits and doctrines of demons,*

Lucifer became Satan. When the Son of God became a man, He was given the name “Jesus.” The Biblical baby name Joshua is Hebrew in origin, and its meaning is Jehovah is my salvation, or saved by Jehovah. Jesus is the English/Greek version of the Hebrew name Joshua.

Satan didn’t become human, he became the enemy of God, so Lucifer the great and glorious angel became Satan, the enemy of God. We will examine this further in our next class. For homework I want you to write a short paragraph of why God cannot be blamed for Satan’s sin. Did God plan for sin? Someone will say to you “God planned for Adam to sin, therefore, God is to blame.”

The easiest response is, “No, Satan made Adam sin.” This sounds like the answer, but then the person will say “God planned Satan to sin.” So,

what's your answer? If you have been paying attention in class, you should already know the answer.

## LECTURE 8

*Prof. Response: I am pleased with your homework answers, you're thinking things through and that is good.*

*Student Question: In my reading I found people who believed in a judgment on the earth prior to Adam. What is that about?*

*Prof. Response: I'm very pleased with the question Pastor Simplicite asked, it is very common. In the history of the English Bible, Dr. Schofield gave one of the earliest study Bibles. He actually promoted a gap theory where there was a previous creation that God destroyed and began all over again in Genesis. It is been challenged by six-day creationists because the grammar of the Genesis creation account will not support this.*

### III. SATAN ACCORDING TO THE OLD TESTAMENT

The Bible has many names for Satan: Satan (Hebrew for “accuser”), devil (the Greek translation of Satan), Belial, Beelzebub, the Adversary, the Dragon, the Enemy, the Serpent, the Tester, and the Wicked One.<sup>8</sup> Our notes will examine the major titles and only touch upon some others. Although his proper name is Satan, this was not always so. He was first named Lucifer.

A. His name was Lucifer

**Isa 14:12:** *How you are fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! How you are cut down to the ground, You who weakened the nations!*

Isaiah records the only reference to Satan's original name: הֵלֵל (hē-lēl) meaning “shining one” or “light-bearing object in the sky.” In the English Bible the term is translated as “Lucifer,” from the LXX Greek translation ἑωσφόρος of similar meaning: “morning star” (See 2 Pet. 2:19). The French Bible translates it “bright shining star.” You see in our notes the word describes the king of Babylon who is possessed, or controlled by Sa-

---

<sup>8</sup> Elwell, W. A., & Comfort, P. W. (2001). *Tyndale Bible dictionary*. Tyndale reference library (1168). Wheaton, IL: Tyndale House Publishers.

tan. “Lucifer” is only used in Isa. 14;12. We have looked at the passage Lucifer.

B. His name is Satan

**1 Ch. 21:1:** *Now Satan stood up against Israel, and moved David to number Israel.*

**Job 1:6:** *Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan also came among them.*

Satan was originally called Lucifer, or morning star, but when he sinned he became Satan. The Hebrew word לְשָׂטָן (*śā-tān*) is very close to the way we pronounce “Saton.” The word Satan is mentioned 27 times in the OT. It is sometimes translated “adversary,” which is the meaning of the word: to withstand, to go against.

You can see why Satan earned the new label. Before he fell he was not opposing God, but when he sinned he became the enemy of God and believers. In 1 Chronicles 21:1 Satan moved David to sin by numbering Israel. Why was numbering Israel a sin? Why did David choose to number Israel?

He may have done this out of pride as the leader of a successful army. He may have numbered his soldiers to determine the strength of his army which would have been a failure of trust in God, or, it could have been sin for David because he was not the chief or general of the army, God was the head. Anyone else have an answer?

Think of it! Was the strength of Israel’s soldiers in their numbers? No, God was. David knew this when he went against Goliath. He stated, “*I go in the name of the Lord.*” You notice Satan moved him to do it. The effect would be great. If the king puts his confidence in the number of the soldiers, where will the people put their confidence? They won’t trust God, they will follow the example of the king. This one temptation that Satan put before David could have resulted in a whole nation turning from God and being defeated.

In our second reference to Satan in Job, the context indicates that Satan got permission to destroy Job’s faith. Further examples of Satan’s opposition to God and believers is found in Psalm 109 the psalmist is rebuking the wicked man and he says “*let Satan stand at his right hand.*” In Zecha-

riah 3, Joshua the high priest, is standing before the angel of the Lord, and Satan is standing at his right hand to resist him.

You can see in these references, Satan is doing exactly what his name implies; resisting God, opposing God, seeking to undermine God's people. We could say his name is the Resister, Opposer, Rebeller. All these are encompassed in the name Satan. This describes exactly what he does.

The Scripture's first reference to Satan's true nature of opposing God is found immediately after creation. Although Scripture reveals that angels were created within the six days of creation (Ex. 20:11), the actual day of their creation is not clear. Nevertheless, the proximity between final creation statement and Satan's introduction cannot be dismissed as unintentional:

**Gen. 2:25:** *And they were both naked, the man and his wife, and were not ashamed.*

**Gen. 3:1:** *Now the serpent was more cunning than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said to the woman, "Has God indeed said, "You shall not eat of every tree of the garden?"*

These adjoining texts infer that Lucifer's creation and his fall to Satan amounted to very little time. Satan's apparent observation of the vulnerability of the beautifully created serpent quickly moved him to take advantage of the beast for the purposes of creating doubt toward God in Adam and Eve. Hence, Satan also took on the name of Satan. It is significant that God not only judged Adam and Eve (Gen. 3:16-19), He also judged both the animal and Satan:

**Gen. 3:14:** *You are cursed more than all cattle, And more than every beast of the field; On your belly you shall go, And you shall eat dust All the days of your life.*

**Gen. 3:15:** *And I will put enmity Between you and the woman, And between your seed and her Seed; He shall bruise your head, And you shall bruise His heel."*

The final statement of Satan's curse: *And between your seed and her Seed; He shall bruise your head, And you shall bruise His heel.* Is a refer-

ence to Satan's final defeat (your seed) by Christ (her seed). This is called the "protoevangelium:"

Because of the grave nature of the context, the fall of man, this passage describes more than just a man stepping on a snake's head. The reference to the seed of the woman as Christ is believed to relate to the Virgin birth of the Messiah, as well as the Hypostatic union of the Divine nature with the Human nature of Christ.<sup>9</sup>

C. He is the Serpent

**Gen. 3:1:** *Now the serpent was more cunning than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made*

In the O.T Satan is first called in Hebrew נָחָשׁ (nachash). This is the most common word for "snake." It is found thirty times in the OT, distributed from Genesis through the minor prophets.<sup>10</sup> The first five occurrences of *nachash* are in Gen. 3:1,2,4,13,14, and of refer to the creature that tempted Eve to disobey God. Opinions differ as to whether this was a Satan inspired snake or a name for Satan himself.<sup>11</sup> It is interesting that in Revelation 12 and 20, we see the serpent called the great dragon, the Devil, and Satan.

**Rev. 12:9:** *And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceives the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.*

**Rev. 20:2:** *And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years,*

#### **IV. SATAN ACCORDING TO THE NEW TESTAMENT**

When we come to the NT we find much more information about Satan:

---

<sup>9</sup> Louis Berkhof, Systematic Theology, Eerdmans 1996, page 294

<sup>10</sup> Alden, R. (1999). 1347 נָחָשׁ. In R. L. Harris, G. L. Archer, Jr. & B. K. Waltke (Eds.), *Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament* (R. L. Harris, G. L. Archer, Jr. & B. K. Waltke, Ed.) (electronic ed.) (571). Chicago: Moody Press.

<sup>11</sup> *Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament* (R. L. Harris, G. L. Archer, Jr. & B. K. Waltke, Ed.) (electronic ed. @1347). Chicago: Moody Press.



A. He is the Devil - accuser or adversary

**Matt. 4:1-8:** *Then Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted by the devil.*

B. He is the Tempter

**Matt. 4:3:** *Now when the tempter came to Him, he said, "If You are the Son of God, command that these stones become bread." (Also see 1 Thess. 3:5)*

C. He is Beelzebub - Prince of the Demons

**Matt. 12:24:** *Now when the Pharisees heard it they said, "This fellow does not cast out demons except by Beelzebub, the ruler of the demons."*

D. He is the Enemy

**Matt. 13:39:** *The enemy who sowed them is the devil, the harvest is the end of the age, and the reapers are the angels.*

E. He is the Evil (Wicked) One

**Matt. 13:19:** *When anyone hears the word of the kingdom, and does not understand it, then the wicked one comes and snatches away what was sown in his heart. (Also see Matt. 13:19, 38; 1 John 13:14; 3:12; 5:18)*

F. He is Belial - Pertaining to worthlessness

**2 Cor. 6:15:** *And what accord has Christ with Belial?*

G. He is the Adversary - one who opposes

**1 Peter 5:8:** *Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour.*

H. He is the Deceiver

**Rev. 12:9:** *So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the Devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world;*

I. He is the Father of Lies

**John 8:44:** *You are of your father the devil ... he is a liar and the father of it.*

J. He is a Murderer

**John 8:44:** *You are of your father the devil, and the desires of your father you want to do. He was a murderer from the beginning,*

K. He is the Sinner –

**1 John 3:8:** *He who sins is of the devil, for the devil has sinned from the beginning.*

**Summary:**

From the list above we see in Matthew 4 Satan is called “the devil.” The word “devil” in Greek means to be an accuser or an adversary. The text is Matt. 4:1-8 about the temptations of Christ. Satan takes Jesus, and

being the adversary of God, tempts Jesus to sin. In that same passage he is called “the tempter.” This name is also used by Paul in 1 Thess. 3:5.

Therefore, these are two additional names; the devil, and the tempter, both given by Christ. Then we have in Matthew 12, the name “Beelzebub.” This has the idea of being the “prince of demons.” In Matthew 13 Satan is called the “enemy.” In the same passage, he is called the “evil one,” or “the wicked one.” If we go down the list, we see in John’s Gospel that Satan is called by Christ “the father of lies” and in John 8 he is called “the murderer.”

During the life of Christ, when the apostles were recording the activities, we see many additional names given for Satan. The NT does not end in names. In 2 Corinthians 6, Paul calls him by the name “Belial,” meaning “worthless.” In 1 Peter 5, Peter calls him the “adversary” Peter uses the word ἀντίδικος (antidikos), meaning an opponent in a suit of law, or an adversary, an enemy.

*Student Question: God was powerful as Creator, why did God leave Satan to live, why did God did not destroy him?*

*Prof. Response: Anyone have an answer to that question?*

*Student Responses: -(not translated)*

*Prof. Response: What do you think Phillip, did they answer your question?*

*I want to know why I did not answer. My concern is that you think I have more authority than these men. I do not.*

*I will say this, you did mention the word “destroy.” Angels or people cannot be destroy or annihilated because we are everlasting beings. All that is spirit created from God is everlasting. Angels are spirit; they live forever. Man is spirit as well as body- he lives forever. That was the purpose of God, so He did not and will not destroy what He has made to be everlasting.*

*But if you use the word “destroy” the way Bible writers use the word, which is to place them forever outside the presence of God, in hell, or the lake of fire, Satan will end up there in the lake of fire. However, God has*

*His own reasons for having some of the fallen angels, including Satan, roam the world and accuse the believers and hold the unsaved in bondage.*

*In the context of this world, Satan is a tool. We see that he usurped the keys of the world from Adam, but even in that, God was sovereign had control) and allowed this to take place. Sometimes we talk about the permissive will of God and the perfect will of God. As humans we use these terms to help explain how God would allow bad things to happen from our opinion. But please understand that this is from the human perspective.*

*We look at how Satan has done bad things and say that can't be the will of God, that's Satan. This is the human way of trying to understand. But if we look at this from God's perspective, there is no distinction between permissive will and perfect will. In God, there is no such thing as second best. What we fail to understand when bad things happen, when terrible things occur, is the justice of God. In reality, when Adam and Eve chose to go against God, they deserved Satan as their leader. It was perfectly just. Because that is what happens with sin- you get what you deserve. Only by God's grace does He intervene or interfere where sin should take us.*

*Your question: Why didn't God eliminate Satan? Why didn't He immediately cast him into hell?*

*My answer: Why didn't God send Adam, or me to hell the first time we sinned? That's the more important question. We cannot judge God's decision. Yet, when I look at my life, everything is grace. Does that help?*

*Remember the parable of the master who makes the clay. Does the clay say to the master "Why do you make me like this?" No, it is the master's choice. The Master never makes mistakes.*

*These are good questions because it helps us look at things from God's perspective and as church leaders we have to do this. Even God's people can fall into the same trap as Satan and think we deserve better. This is a very common thing in America for Americans to think we deserve better. In America we have programmed in our attitudes to think we are the best. But Americans are not the best. Americans say, "We deserve all the blessings," No, we do not. I see in most of the Africans a better humility than in*

*America. Life is so difficult here, you count your blessings; life in America is easy for the most part, so we forget to count our blessings.*

There are a few more names that we have not looked at. In Revelation 12:9 Satan is said to “deceive” the whole world. The Greek word used is *πλανῶ* (*planao*). Here it means to cause to stray, to lead astray, lead aside from the right way. In 1 John 3 we are told Satan has “sinned” from the beginning. Here the common Greek word *ἁμαρτάνω* (*hamartano*) is used, meaning to miss the mark, to miss or wander from the path of uprightness and honour, to do or go wrong

In the NT there is a total of eighty-three references to Satan with these names, and Satan or the devil is used seventy out of the eighty three times. When we consider what all the Scriptures say about Satan, we see the true nature of the evil one.

## **SATAN’S EVIL CHARACTER**

### **I. TWO-FOLD WICKEDNESS**

#### **A. Ambitious Pride**

**Is. 14:13:** *For thou hast said in thine heart, I will...*

**Ez. 28:17:** *Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty; You corrupted your wisdom for the sake of your splendor*

**1 Tim. 3:** *Not a novice, lest being lifted up with pride he fall into the condemnation of the devil.*

We saw Satan’s ambitious pride in Isaiah 14, expressed by his five “I will” statements. In Ezekiel 28, we saw Satan’s practice of merchandizing to promote himself. But Paul’s reference to this in 1 Tim 3:6, 7 is uniquely significant to our class.

Prof. Question: what is the context of 1 Tim 3?

Student Response: The qualification of church leaders, deacons and elders.

In the context of the qualifications for elders or bishops, one of the things Paul cautions against is taking a man, new to the faith, a novice, and placing him in church leadership. If a church puts men new to the faith into a position of leadership or authority, they may fall into the same prob-

lem as Satan, ambitious pride. Satan said: “I’m the top angel.” His free will started to bring pride. How much more difficult it would be for a person young and weak in the faith who has no free will, except by the Spirit is leading, to be tempted by the position of a leader.

I have learned from 25 years in pastoral ministry that a novice has nothing to do with how long you have been saved; it has to do with how much maturity you have in Christ. In our church, we chose a man to be an elder who we thought was mature in the faith. Falling into pride, he tried to take my job as senior pastor. His attitude and conduct became so bad that the deacons wanted to eliminate the position of elder from the church constitution. Satan had potential, through this man, to do great damage to me. I can say, by the grace of God, this issue was resolved and all was reconciled. This man and myself are friends. Pride is a great problem in the church. It is sown by Satan himself, the chief of pride.

We also see the work of Satan in promoting lies, falsehood, and deception.

#### B. Untruth

**John 8:44:** *You are of your father the devil, and the desires of your father you want to do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own resources, for he is a liar and the father of it.*

Jesus is speaking and the description he gives of Satan is very clear, there is no truth in Satan. In the context of the passage, Jesus is rebuking the leaders of Israel and says, “You are not the true children of Abraham.” They are lying, deceiving the people, speaking falsehood and lies regarding Jesus, Himself. They were seeking to kill Jesus and he says although you say you are the children of Abraham, you are not, your father is the devil. Then Jesus describes Satan.

You can imagine how much those words of truth provoked the leaders in determining to kill Him. That is a lesson for us as we preach. Jesus spoke the truth no matter what the results would be. From a human perspective, because Jesus spoke the truth, they killed Him.

Prof. Question: Do you think there are pastors who have been killed because they spoke the truth?

Student Response: Yes.

Prof. Response: As a matter of fact, there is at this time more persecution against the true church than there has been at any other time in history. Do you know the country where the church is growing faster than any other country in the world?

Student Response: -China? -I think I know but I won't say!

Prof. Response: In America, the true church is growing at less than 1% per year. We are not doing well. In Cameroon the church is growing at 4.5%, I think. You are a small nation of 17 million people, but you are reaching the lost five times more than the church in America. But, when we go all the way to the country that is doing the greatest you will never believe the country it is. It is Iran. A Muslim country has the fastest growing church in the world.

Is the church comfortable in Iran? No! Sharing the gospel in Iran could mean death. They speak the truth even though it may mean their death. The church is exploding in Iran. Jesus said, "you shall know the truth and the truth will set you free." In your own ministry, be sure to preach the truth whatever becomes of it.

Student Question: Do you have any idea of the percentage for Iran? Prof. Response: I did, but I don't remember. You can get this information on the internet if you search for Evangelical Church growth statistics. Most websites do not distinguish between Liberal Christianity and Evangelical Christianity. The website by Christ Star does distinguish these. (At the time of this book writing: "Christianity is reportedly the fastest growing religion in Iran with an average annual rate of 5.2%.")

The point is that in the worst of situations where everyone is against God, the truth has great power. So preach the truth. I think the church in America, if the Lord does not come back, will be facing persecution. In both Canada and some of the States there is a movement in politics to silence Christians and in their position. It is hard to imagine this will take place, but I can see it happening. It is happened in other countries of the

*world. America gained its fire for Christ in its early years of separation from Europe. When you go to the countries that were at one time great countries of the truth, they are virtually dead now, for instance, Britain. Preach the truth!*

**Romans 1:25:** *who exchanged the truth of God for the lie, and worshiped and served the creature rather than the Creator, who is blessed forever.*

In the context (verse 18), the wrath of God is poured out against ungodliness. Paul goes on to say that God's attributes which can be seen, have been denied. Therefore, man changed the truth for the lie and worshipped other gods, worshipped creation, and worshipped their own man-made gods. In this context, we see that man believed the lie.

The Greek word ψεύδος (*pseudos*), translated "lie," has the article τό (*to*). Therefore, it was not that they believed "lies" (plural), but they believed "the lie." The article distinguishes the uniqueness of what they have fallen into referring to "The Lie" from Satan. A book by Ken Ham states "The Lie" to be the theory of evolution. His book suggests this is the greatest lie.

You can see that essence of Satan's lie is to cause Adam and Eve to deny that God is good and that God is who He is. In reality, the end result of evolution is the same; there is no God. We see the evil world under the influence of Satan has matched his own character and believed the lie.

**2 Thess. 2:7-9:** *For the mystery of lawlessness is already at work; only He who now restrains will do so until He is taken out of the way. And then the lawless one will be revealed, whom the Lord will consume with the breath of His mouth and destroy with the brightness of His coming. The coming of the lawless one is according to the working of Satan, with all power, signs, and lying wonders,*

In the context, Paul is writing about the coming of the Lord Jesus Christ (2:1). He is showing them this has not taken place yet, therefore, they haven't missed it. Paul further states that before this takes place, there will be the fullness of *the mystery of lawlessness*. He says the coming of the lawless one is according to the working of Satan (2:9). Paul is speaking

of what will take place during the tribulation period when Satan will be deceiving people by the anti-Christ and the false prophet. Satan's power through these individuals will be influencing the world toward lawlessness. Again, we see Satan is the ruler behind all this evil, and the nature of it is described as lawlessness, involving everything that is not true. Here we see the character of Satan's ambitious pride through falsehood and lies.

### C. Three Forces

#### 1. The Force of the Man of Sin

**Rev. 13:4:** *So they worshiped the dragon who gave authority to the beast; and they worshiped the beast, saying, "Who is like the beast? Who is able to make war with him?"*

The context in this text indicates that the "man of sin," who is ruling the world at this time, is under the power or force of Satan, "the beast." This takes place during the 7seven-year tribulation period.

The world worships both the devil and the pseudo-Christ. The latter was given *a mouth to utter proud words and blasphemies* (already apparent in the claims of the Roman emperors to divinity) *and to exercise his authority for forty-two months, i.e. the period of tribulation*, (see 11:2–3; 12:14). Who gave him that authority, including *power to make war against the saints and to conquer them* (7)? In v 4 it is the dragon who gave the authority; but the limit of *forty-two months* was set by God. Accordingly, it is the divine permission that ultimately controls the actions of antichrist (*cf. Dn. 8:9–14; 11:36*).<sup>12</sup>

#### 2. The Force of the Restrainer

**2 Thess. 2:6-7:** *And now you know what is restraining, that he may be revealed in his own time. For the mystery of lawlessness is already at work; only He who now restrains will do so until He is taken out of the way.*

It is significant that this context states that the "restrainer" is now holding back the "the mystery of lawlessness" until "He" (the restrainer) is tak-

---

<sup>12</sup> *New Bible commentary: 21st century edition*. 1994 (D. A. Carson, R. T. France, J. A. Motyer & G. J. Wenham, Ed.) (4th ed.) (1442). Leicester, England; Downers Grove, IL: Inter-Varsity Press.



en out of the way. Paul does not identify this restrainer, consequently many theories of who he is have arisen: Satan, a man, the Holy Spirit, the church. In my opinion, the church best fits the context. The church is active today and only the church will be taken out of the way, in the rapture.

In spite of its weakness and seeming failure, never underestimate the importance of the church in the world. People who criticize the church do not realize that the presence of the people of God in this world gives unsaved people opportunity to be saved. The presence of the church is delaying the coming of judgment. Lot was not a dedicated man, but his presence in Sodom held back the wrath of God (Gen. 19:12–29).<sup>13</sup>

### 3. The Force of the Destroyer

**Rev. 19:15:** *Now out of His mouth goes a sharp sword, that with it He should strike the nations. And He Himself will rule them with a rod of iron. He Himself treads the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God. And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS.*

The context of this verse is clear, the Coming Destroyer is The Lord Jesus Christ:

...this Rider is the true Christ. He is not coming *in the air* to take His people home (1Thes. 4:13-18), but *to the earth* with His people, to conquer His enemies and establish His kingdom.<sup>14</sup>

*Student Question:* *I want you to explain the gap theory.*

*Prof. Response:* *I will tell you what it is. If you go to Gen. 1, the first verse we all know. Someone read it.*

*Student Response:* *In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.*

*Prof. Response:* *Okay. Now in vs 2, what is the first word?*

*Student Response:* *And*

---

<sup>13</sup> Wiersbe, W. W. (1996). *The Bible exposition commentary* (2 Th 2:1–7). Wheaton, IL: Victor Books.

<sup>14</sup> Wiersbe, W. W. (1996). *The Bible exposition commentary* (Re 19:11–20:3). Wheaton, IL: Victor Books.

*Prof. Response: Yes! The KJV honours the text by starting the verse with the word “and.” In the Hebrew, this conjunction is pronounced “wow.” The gap theory suggested that the conjunction suggested that there was a new beginning in verse 2, beginning with what was left over from a previous creation. The Gap theory suggests that without form and void was the result of a judgment of God that left the pre-creation in this condition.*

*Schofield, who held to this theory, could therefore say “that’s why earth appears to be billions years old.” Remember this was in the time of modernist thinking. Science was how you determined truth. The Gap theory came out of that context to answer the legitimacy of science proving the age of the earth as billions of years.*

*We reject the gap theory because it denies Ex. 20:11 where Scripture states that everything was created in six days. And we reject the gap theory because it is not consistent with the conjunction “wow.” The conjunction “wow” translated “And,” which connects verse 1 and 2, clearly shows sequential action. That is, verse 1 cannot be a sort of modifying clause of verse 2, but rather is a declarative statement followed by a second declarative statement. The NIV Bible catches the true meaning: “Now the earth was formless and empty....”*

*Science is incorrect. If you attend my Apologetics class in January, we will discuss these matters more thoroughly. Does that answer the question?*

*The gap theory would not have been developed today because in post-modernist thinking science does not bring an understanding of absolute truth. If some scientist proves the earth is flat, the attitude would be, “Okay, that’s your truth.”*

## LECTURE 9

*Student Question: In 1 Peter 5:8 Satan is called The Devil, and he is described as the adversary, but you used this description as his name. Why?*

*Prof. Response: In Peter it is a word that describes the devil. But when we were listing the names we were using some of the descriptions to identify*

*him even as Jesus did. That is an excellent observation. I wanted us to see that God is precise in the words He uses and in our languages, English or French, we do not see that in the distinction in the translations.*

*Student Question: The Bible online translates Diabolos as Satan.*

*Prof. Response Really? That is not right. Diabolos the other is devil. In English, Devil it is almost a transliteration of diabolos. Satan is also a transliteration of the word Greek Satana. I don't know why online would have translated it that way. It could be that they were using a different original manuscript, it could be different in another text.*

## **II. SATAN S SINFULNESS**

We are looking now at Satan's sinfulness. What the Bible indicates as God's indictments or as accusations against Satan. This is a very long list so we will not look at the texts. I suggest you look up each passage and make your own comments in the space provided. The list, being so long, suggests that Satan is very busy trying to undermine God.

Here are the Biblical record of indictments against Satan:

- (1) He repudiated God in the beginning (Isa. 14: 12-14) .
- (2) He drew a third part of the stars of heaven after him (Rev.12:4).
- (3) He sinned from the beginning (1 John 3:8).
- (4) He is a liar from the beginning (John 8:44).
- (5) In the Garden of Eden he belittled God and advised the first parents to repudiate God (Gen. 3:1-5).

In the Garden of Eden he belittled God and advised the first parents to repudiate God. That's an interesting statement- "he belittled." How did he belittle God? He basically said "God didn't say that, God didn't mean that." Did God tell you "you will die"? You won't die. As soon as Adam and Eve sinned, they knew they died to God. They knew they were lied to, but it was too late.

- (6) He insinuated to Jehovah that Job loved and served Him only as he was hired to do so (Job 1:9).

No greater insult could be addressed to Jehovah than that Job did not really love Him on the ground of His own worthiness, but by owning all,

He is able to hire men like Job to *pretend* that they love Him. This is the greatest insult to God, to tell God you are not loved because of who you are, you are loved because what you do for people.

Satan was implying: look you blessed him, he is the richest man in the world, that is the only reason he loves you. He is prosperous. You need to understand that preaching the “Prosperity Gospel” will have the same effect; people will love God not because of who He is, but how He prospers you.

That is why we have to be careful. Although we do not preach the prosperity gospel, we can share the blessings of walking with God inappropriately. Sometimes we present the idea that the reason for walking with God and for obedience to God is because that’s the *place* of blessing. That is a true statement, it is the place of blessing, but that’s not the reason we obey, it is not the reason we walk with God.

We do those things because of who He is, and we love Him regardless of whether He “blesses” me or not. Job demonstrated this. He regretted the day he was born because of all his troubles, but he never failed to honour and be loyal to God. His attitude was: “the Lord gives, the Lord takes away, blessed be the name of the Lord.” Job determined: “I’m going to love God regardless.” Even though he “cursed the day he was born.” If Ewe here had been Job, he would have changed his name from “Tuesday” to “Thursday” so he would not remember the day he was born.

(7) When permitted to act his own part, Satan brought five terrible calamities on Job (Job 1:13-2:7).

When permitted to act on his own part, Satan brought five terrible calamities on Job. There is no restraint on Satan’s working of evil. He not only took everything away from Job, but he did it in such a way it brought great heaviness on his soul. Satan was like the merciless boxer who punches and does not wait for the effect but punches and punches.

You laugh at my example, but remember this Job was a brother in the Lord. There may be times in our life when God says the same thing to Satan about us. “Emmanuel only loves you because you are blessing him; let me at him.” Is that possible? Why not? God has permitted him to be the

accuser. But, although Satan intends it for evil, God always intends this for good. Satan hasn't figured this out yet. He doesn't realize that when he is punching, every punch is building faith.

(8) He stood up against Israel (1 Chron. 21:1; Ps. 109:6; Zech. 3:1-2).

(9) He weakened the nations (Isa. 14:12).

(10) He made the earth to tremble (Isa. 14:16).

(11) He did shake kingdoms (Isa. 14:16).

(12) He makes the world a wilderness (Isa. 14:17).

This verse has an interesting way of describing Satan's work; making the world *a wilderness*. Although we will see some of the destruction of Satan's efforts in the tribulation, this could be a spiritual wilderness. He destroys cities. He does not open the house of prisoners, in other words, those in bondage he keeps in bondage. Is this what history shows? Yes. There is no end to war. What arrogance Satan possesses!

(13) He destroys the cities thereof (Isa. 14:17).

(14) He opened not the house of his prisoners (Isa. 14:17).

(15) He causes war on earth with all its horrors; for when bound, war ceases, and when loosed, war is resumed (Rev. 20:2,7-8).

(16) He tempted the Son of God forty days and then left Him but for a season. He proposed to Christ that He forsake His mission, that He distrust His Father's goodness, and that He worship the devil (Luke 4:1-13).

(17) He bound a daughter of Abraham eighteen years (Luke 13:16; Acts 10:38).

(18) He entered Judas and prompted him to betray the Son of God (John 13:2).

What does point 18 tell us about Judas? He entered Judas. What does that tell you about Judas? He was possessed. What does it tell you about his spiritual life. He was not saved. Some people question if Judas was saved, or fell into sin. But a saved person, in any age of history, cannot be possessed by demons. That's because salvation in every age is the spirit of man being united again with God, who is spirit. I personally believe and teach that every age there was the indwelling of God for salvation. And where the spirit of God is, Satan cannot be, cannot possess.

(19) He blinds the minds of those who are lost (2 Cor. 4:3-4).

(20) He takes away the Word out of the hearts of the unsaved, lest they should believe and be saved (Luke 8:12).

As we stop for a moment and talk about Satan taking the Word away from the hearts of the unsaved, again we remember that in all that he is doing, God is sovereign, God is setting the limits. We see that even Jesus Christ spoke in parable so the people would not understand and not believe. We can argue about why God does this. My own opinion is that they had opportunity and they rejected it and he confirmed them in their rejection. But the point is that even when Satan is removing from the hearts of the unsaved the word, it is God's will. Satan has not clued in yet. Even in doing this terrible thing he is achieving the purposes of God.

*Student Question: (Phillip) Do you think the children of God can be influenced by Satan?*

*Prof. Response: Oh yes, he can oppress. David was moved by Satan to count the army, and he was a saved man, a believer. You will have to take the class in anthropology, hamartiology, soteriology,. We are talking about that today in that class.*

*Student Question: How can Satan take the word from the people heart? By possession?*

*Prof. Response: No, I don't think so.*

*Student Question: (Emmanuel) How do some of them get to the point where they don't receive the word.*

*Prof. Response: Remember, our brother is talking about unsaved people. You are talking about saved people. He said, the Word was preached to the unsaved first, how did the Word get in their heart?*

*What did Jesus say to Peter? He said "My father has revealed this to you."*

*But Emmanuel asked how would Satan achieve removing the word from the minds of the people. I think the parable of the sower demonstrates the power of Satan. He presses on the mind the cares of the world so the mind gets distracted. He uses the reasoning, foolish blind reason-*

*ing, to influence people to doubt God. He may even bring temptation that an individual to fall in that brings pleasure and people would rather choose pleasure. We are told that he has many schemes and many ways in which he fights.*

(21) He deals with saints with wiles and snares (Eph. 6:11; 2 Tim. 2:26).

In these texts it is important to understand what a snare is. A snare is a way to trap people that brings slow death. So do you use snares in Africa? Most of the time all the snare does is painfully trap the animal, it doesn't kill them.

(22) He has exercised and abused the power of death (Heb. 2:14; Rev. 1:18).

Remember, his power is only given to him in terms of death, at the will and purposes of God. He does not have the power of death in the sense of choosing who will die, but the power in God allowing him to be the executioner. That text tells us that the abuse of the power of death that he uses is the fear of death. Most people in the world would do anything to escape death. God's people should be the exception.

(23) He, an adversary, as a roaring lion goes about seeking whom he may devour (Pet. 5:8).

“As a roaring lion” is a picture of how dangerous Satan is.

(24) He is opposed to God; is the persecutor of saints, the “father” of lies. Through his emissaries, he dethrones reason, tortures human beings, and moves them to superstition and idolatry (Eph. 2:1-3).

Here you see that last phrase characterizes so much of our world. It pictures people being led by superstition and idolatry. Of course, in Cameroon there is no superstition!

### **THE SATANIC COSMOS**

We have had the question asked about how Satan became the small god of this world. We know that in deceiving Eve and Adam following Eve, he usurped the God-given authority Adam had over the planet and took that upon himself. Understand that?

Now when we look at Scriptures in the context of Satanology, we start to

discuss his world, his cosmos. It is a world that is left after sin, where the principle of death rules. Remember the chart we had, the character of the kingdom with newness and righteousness, where the character of Satan's kingdom is death and oldness and wickedness and many other descriptions. Again we go back to some of those passages that have given so much information.

The prophet Isaiah shares much light on Satan's Cosmos with his analogy of Babylon's defeat (Isa. 13:1-14:23). Before we examine Isaiah's analogy, consider Wiersbe's comments:

But it is clear that Isaiah's prophecy describes something more significant than the ups and downs of an ancient city. The prophets often began a message by focusing on local events, but then enlarged their vision to reveal something greater. Isaiah saw in the fall of Babylon a picture of "the day of the Lord" (Isa. 13:6, 9, 13)... The prophet saw in this event something far deeper than the defeat of an empire. ***In the fall of the king of Babylon, he saw the defeat of Satan, the "prince of this world,"*** [emphasis mine] who seeks to energize and motivate the leaders of nations (John 12:31; Eph. 2:1-3). Daniel 10:20 indicates that Satan has assigned "princes" (fallen angels) to the various nations so that he can influence leaders to act contrary to the will of God.<sup>15</sup>

## I. SATAN'S AUTHORITY OVER THE COSMOS

### A. Satan's influence

**Isa. 14:12-17:** *"How you are fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! How you are cut down to the ground, You who weakened the nations! For you have said in your heart: "I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will also sit on the mount of the congregation On the farthest sides of the north; I will ascend above the heights of the clouds, I will be like the Most High." Yet you shall be brought down to Sheol, To the lowest depths of the Pit. "Those who see you will gaze at you, And consider you, saying: "Is this the man who made the earth tremble, Who shook kingdoms, Who made the world as a wilderness And destroyed its cities, Who did not open the house of his prisoners?"*

Lewis Chafer, in his Systematic Theology states that Satan has six points of influence over the world stated in Isaiah 14. Remember the char-

---

<sup>15</sup> Wiersbe, W. W. (1996). *Be Comforted*. "Be" Commentary Series (45).



acter of Satan is to pursue his wickedness without restraint. Now we know that even that is his pursuit, God does restrain him. Paul talks about that in 2Thessaonians; when the restrainer is removed, the man of evil will not be restrained anymore in those seven years. From Isaiah 14 we see that he weakens nations. We can see this in history. That when nations turn from God and become atheistic as they are today, God allows Satan to raise leaders that the nations deserve. You've experienced this on your continent where there are wicked leaders.

Here is Chafer's list of these six points of Isaiah 14:

(1) did *weaken the nations*. In the Word of God the nations, as such, are seen to be opposed to God (Ps. 2: 1—3), and especially as in contradistinction to the one elect nation, Israel. These nations form the essential factor in the *cosmos*. What they might have been, had they not embraced the satanic ideals, none can estimate but God alone. Whatever their brute strength may be as self-measured, they are before God as “a drop of a bucket, and are counted as the small dust of the balance” (to be blown away). “All nations before him are as nothing; and they are counted to him as less than nothing, and vanity” (Isa. 40:15, 17). Thus, also, it is written in Isaiah(2) that Satan, at the end of his evil career, will have *made the earth to tremble*; (3) he will have *shaken kingdoms*; (4) he will have *made the world a wilderness*; (5) he will have *destroyed the cities thereof*; and (6) he will have hindered the benefits of humanity to the extent that he has *not opened the house of his prisoners*. Imagination fails to follow these undertakings and can add nothing to what is here set forth. The sum total of all the evil Satan will have wrought is beyond estimation.<sup>16</sup>

Let me make a few comments on these six points:

#1 He weakens the nations. I even had it marked there, and I didn't notice.

I spent eight years teaching in Ghana and Togo and I could not believe the president of Togo would kill his own people. On two occasions while I was teaching there, businesses from Europe came to build factories so people could have an income, have a steady life. One company was producing sugar by encouraging the people to grow sugar cane. Another com-

---

Wheaton, IL: Victor Books.

<sup>16</sup> Lewis Sperry Chafer, Systematic Theology, vol. 2 (Grand Rapids, MI: Kregel Publica-

pany made tin from the iron deposits in Togo and made tin roofing for buildings. In both of these situations, the people surrounding that district became dependent on the factories.

Then the president started taxing these companies beyond what they could afford to pay. So the businesses just walked away, left the machinery and walked away from the country. As I drove through, I saw that because the people were dependent, and did not have their farms anymore, they were starving, when there was so much to offer. As I was seeing this and my heart was breaking for the little children who were starving I had to also remember that of the countries, Togo is probably the worst for Spiritism. Satan had a tool to keep them under his power to worship demons. He weakened that country, and it is still weakened today. God gave them the leader they deserved.

#2 He makes the earth to tremble.

Now we see this literally at the end of his empowerment in the tribulation, where he is pretending to be God with the power of God. But I think there is also the concept here of the spiritual aspect of people's trembling. Truly there is an expression of power in the physical realm that God allows Satan to have. We know that when Moses was giving the signs for his authority in Egypt, the first few the priests were able to duplicate.

#3 He shakes kingdoms.

This basically gives the idea of making kingdoms unstable. We have seen in the last ten years the weakening of the EU and the many nations that are in that union. And depending on who you listen to in terms of economic stability, there are countries like Greece and Spain, who if they did not have the countries within the EU to bail them out, they would have collapsed completely.

#4 He makes the world a wilderness.

Do you use the word "desert" for wilderness? Basically the term here means Satan makes the world barren. When God created the world he put in it the principle of life, and the life principle was so great that Adam had to cultivate it and direct it. That was his responsibility. And even though

we live in Satan's cosmos, that life principle is still strong in the world. I think I shared with some that in my property I have a rock that within a crack had a seed that grew and became a tree. And when scientists look at our planet, they can see the evidence of life everywhere, even in desert where there is nothing but sand.

But the principle that is operating in our world is the principle of death. We've seen that these desert areas are growing, expanding and taking away what used to be good, fertile land. I think we mentioned how science that plays with the DNA of crops (genetically altered) has increased the production of crops but has increased the danger of the crops to people. So today we have around the world allergies that are growing exponentially. So many people have dangerous allergies now.

The week before I came, I was with my son, and he had a group of people in their home to have a time of fellowship. My son's wife, in preparing food, had to be sure there was no hint of peanut oil in any of the food. One of the invited children had a severe allergy, even a touch of peanut oil on his tongue would cause death (laughter). We can laugh, but I know a family who lost a 16 year old daughter because someone gave her a peanut butter sandwich. The world is becoming a wilderness even in its increased prosperity.

#5 He destroys the cities.

As the King of Babylon represented a ruthless tyrant who reduced defeated cities into a wilderness without inhabitants and treated people unmercifully, so *O Lucifer, son of the morning* purposes to destroy cities without mercy. In ancient times cities were the strongholds of society, impregnable by pursuing armies. This phrase expresses the great power of the evil one.

# 6 He does not open the house of his prisoners.

Then lastly, he does not open the house of the prisoner. That could mean many things. It certainly suggests that those that are prisoners to him, he will deny the benefits of humanity, he will withhold blessings so they will suffer and even die. When I think of Togo as I saw it when I was teaching there for 8 years, many people there were in the bondage of Spir-

itism, they are prisoners to idolatry. In a world where there is so much food, these people were starving.

You have perhaps experienced sickness that could be remedied with the right medication, but there was no money to buy it. With no medication, people die. Three years ago one of the students had a son die of malaria right here on campus. Yet, simple medication could have corrected that condition. Unfortunately he did not contact the clinic for help.

I live in a country where the benefits most people have provide free medication because it is paid for by the government. Nevertheless, that is an exception to most countries. However, I know a woman in the U.S.A. with cancer who was denied treatment because she could not afford it. Indeed, Satan has hindered the benefits of humanity to most of humanity, he truly has *not opened the house of his prisoners*.

When you look at these six points of influence over the world, you see that Satan hates this world, and wants to destroy it. He wants to destroy humanity. But, he doesn't want to destroy it in a quick death, he wants us to suffer.

There is a writer named Calvin Miller who wrote an allegorical fiction series of books called *The Singer*, *The Song*, and *The Finale*, for adults. In this continuous three book story a new world is created. It is a beautiful world with beautiful creatures on it. Then one creature comes to this planet. He takes one of the most beautiful animals and the book describes this creature using his nail to take the skin off this animal while the animal is still alive. It is a terrible, painful description.

One day when I was preaching about the way Satan works, I actually read that passage to my church. There were people who got up and left because they could not hear the words, it was so bad. When I concluded, I said this was a picture of Satan's tactics. This was what sin will do. I wanted people to see how God sees sin and Satan's work, such evil! So we don't want to minimize Satan in his cosmos.

#### B. Satan's five-fold power over creation evident in Job

We see these six points of influence. In a more specific way we see how Satan's power over creation is evident even in Job's life. The first

two chapters of Job are a good look at how Satan operates. The purpose of Job is to see that God's people do suffer, but we should never abandon God. Rather, we should trust him even as Job did.

Under this section, I will give you the five expressions of Satan's power seen in the book of Job.

#1- Satan moved the Sabeans to destroy Job's livestock. So the oxen and asses were killed. They also killed Job's servants.

#2- Without any delay, he caused fire to come from heaven to burn up the sheep and the servants who tended them. Job lost All the oxen and asses and beasts to do the work on his property and then he lost his sheep and all the shepherds.

#3- He causes the Chaldeans to rob him of his camels and kill the servants who looked after the camels. That's Satan's third punch.

#4- Without any pause, no break, he causes a wind to collapse the house and kill all his children.

#5- After Job has lost everything, Satan gives him grievous sores on his body, and he scrapes them to relieve the pus. How painful that must have been!

The way the sores are described seems to suggest they were boils. Do you know what a boil is? Have any of you suffered from a boil? I remember when I was a child, I had a boil, and a piece of dirt got in it causing it to swell up. It is very painful. One boil is very painful, compared to an abscessed tooth. But, Job's body was covered with boils. I cannot imagine that.

When you look at this, you see that Satan has power over people and nations, past and present. Satan has power over the elements like fire and the wind destroy. Satan has power over the physical body as evident in Job. We see Job, a believer, but God permitted him to be "tempted" by Satan to deny God. From God's perspective it is a "trial" to build Job's faith.

You need to understand the difference between trials and temptation. Trial and temptation in the NT is the same word: *πειρασμός* (peirasmos), but when it is delivered from Satan, its purpose is to destroy faith (1 Cor.

7:5), so that why it is called a temptation. But from God's perspective "peirasmos" is a trial to build faith (James 1:2). So, you will see that in Job's life, God did continue to bless him in his continued loyalty and faith in God.

There is something that I think is very interesting in the book of Job. **Job 42:10, 12-13:** *And the LORD restored Job's losses {Literally Job's captivity, that is, what was captured from Job } when he prayed for his friends. Indeed the LORD gave Job twice as much as he had before... Now the LORD blessed the latter days of Job more than his beginning; for he had fourteen thousand sheep, six thousand camels, one thousand yoke of oxen, and one thousand female donkeys. He also had seven sons and three daughters.*

After Job's trials, God blessed him by doubling his possessions. God gives us Job's assets in numbers: *fourteen thousand sheep, six thousand camels, one thousand yoke of oxen, and one thousand female donkeys.* Job's assets were precisely doubled. The number is not important but recognizing God's deliberate faithfulness is.

Also note that at the beginning Job had ten children (1:2), God gave him ten more children (42:13). Why didn't God double them? This is a theological question. He lost the first ten children in the great wind storm, and God doubled them. Job was a righteous man, and his children taken also worshipped God. Job did not lose them. When God gave him ten more children, He doubled them as well. This gives us biblical perspective of the dead believer. I know you smile at my methodology, but my goal is to help us think biblically. We often fail to see things the way God sees them. I remember when the Lord showed me this. The Lord gave me this truth in Job, one of Scripture's earliest books. It blessed me so much. My father died in 1998, but I did not lose him. I will see him and be with him again. Your daughter died of malaria, but you did not lose her. This is to me a great blessing.

C. Satan's domain evident in the temptations of Jesus

**Lu 4:5-7:** *Then the devil, taking Him up on a high mountain, showed Him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time. And the devil said to*

*Him, "All this authority I will give You, and their glory; for this has been delivered to me, and I give it to whomever I wish. "Therefore, if You will worship before me, all will be Yours."*

1. Satan holds the “keys” of the kingdoms of the world

From Isaiah 14 we see those six points of Satan’s influence over the cosmos. In Job we see Satan’s 5 points of power over creation. Here in Luke 4 we have the story of the temptation of Jesus. You notice what Satan says to him there in verse 6? “*All this authority I will give you.*” Satan took Jesus to the temple and showed Him all the kingdoms of the world. Somehow Satan was able to bring a picture or image of all these nations before Jesus.

He brought this vision of all these nations before Jesus to tempt Him. This tells us Satan has power to bring visions before people. Imagine how he can use this tactic to deceive people today. There are people in the world who believe there is intelligent life on other planets that have come to visit us. There have been whole towns of people who have seen flying saucers, space ships from other planets, intelligent beings from other worlds. This has led people to deny the Bible and say we have come from other planets.

2. Satan offers the kingdom of the world to Christ

Could such visions be mass deceptions by Satan bringing these images to deceive people? Absolutely! We see he has the authority over all the kingdoms of the world, he owns the keys to them all. Therefore, He offers this authority to Christ. I want you to see that Satan does hold the power of all the kingdoms of the world. He stole the authority from Adam. The offer to give that authority to Jesus was legitimate, even if it was only intended to cause Jesus to fail, which could never happen. Nevertheless, even with the authority and legitimate offer to Jesus, Satan has always been a puppet on God’s string, to accomplish God’s purposes.

*Prof. Question:* *Was it a legitimate offer? Could he have given all the power?*

*Student Response:* *No.*

Prof. Response: *Oh! Who had the power? Who held the keys at that moment? God gave them to Adam, Satan deceived and got them from Adam. So is Satan the god of this world?*

Student Response: *Yes.*

Prof. Question: *Then, was Satan able to give the keys of the kingdoms to Christ?*

Student Response: *No.*

Prof. Response: *Well, I can't convince you. Let me try again: If Satan usurped the keys God had given Adam, did he have the authority to give them to Christ if Christ bowed to him.*

Student Response: *No, it is not legitimate for him to give the keys to Christ.*

Prof. Response: *You're saying he couldn't because Jesus would not take them.. But that doesn't make it illegitimate. Satan owned the keys, he possessed the keys. What he had power to do he could legitimately do; offer them even though we know Christ would not, indeed could not comply. The temptation is genuine even though we know Christ would not do it. The Bible tells us Jesus was tempted in every point as man. Jesus could be genuinely tempted because he was man. Just like Adam in the garden, in his perfect state, was tempted to take the fruit. That's what I mean by legitimate.*

Student Response: *We agreed, but it was the word "legitimate" that is the problem.*

Prof. Response: *In the context where Adam failed and fell, Christ, the Second Adam never sinned. The Luke context tells us that Satan left Him for only a while. Just like every other man on the planet, temptation was Christ's constant experience. You can imagine, with Satan's experience of 6000 plus years, the multiple kinds of temptations he could bring to Jesus that are not mentioned in the Scripture. For our purposes, we want to see that he did have the power of all the kingdoms of the world. He stole the authority from Adam. The offer to give that authority to Jesus was legitimate, even if it was only intended to cause Jesus to fail, which could never happen.*



## LECTURE 10

We have been looking at Satan's usurped "keys" of the earth, signifying his rule or authority as "the god of this world" (2 Cor. 4:4), and Satan's legitimate offer of the world's kingdoms to Christ. Before we go on, I want you to see the extent of Satan's deception of man in disguising himself as God. The book of Revelation describes Satan's activity during the "Tribulation" after the church has been "raptured." Described as "the dragon" (12:3... 12 times) he empowers two beasts to do his bidding. "Beast" (Greek: Θηρίον, *Thērion*) refers to one of two beasts described in the Revelation:

The first beast comes "out of the sea" and is given authority and power by the dragon. This first beast is initially mentioned in Revelation 11:7 as coming out of the abyss. His appearance is described in detail in Revelation 13:1-10, and some of the mystery behind his appearance is revealed in Revelation 17:7-18. The second beast comes "out of the earth" and directs all peoples of the earth to worship the first beast. The second beast is associated with Revelation 13:11-18 the false prophet. The two beasts are aligned with the dragon in opposition to God. They persecute the "saints" and those who do "not worship the image of the beast [of the sea]" and influence the kings of the earth to gather for the battle of Armageddon.<sup>17</sup>

Satan himself establishes his own false trinity. The planner is the dragon replacing the Father, the first beast is the anti-Christ replacing the Son, and the second beast empowers the first beast to perform, and he is like the Spirit of God. There are three forces in the world that follow after Satan's Character:

1. The World: The present world-system that tries to bring us down.

**1 Jn. 2:15-17:** *Do not love the world or the things in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him. For all that is in the world -the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life -is not*

---

17 [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The\\_Beast\\_\(Revelation\)#cite\\_note-1](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Beast_(Revelation)#cite_note-1)

*of the Father but is of the world. And the world is passing away, and the lust of it; but he who does the will of God abides forever.*

2.The Flesh: The old sinful nature. It is the nature we inherit at birth.

**Gen. 5:3,4:** *And Adam lived one hundred and thirty years, and begot a son in his own likeness, after his image, and named him Seth.*

*After he begot Seth, the days of Adam were eight hundred years; and he had sons and daughters.* The likeness was in Adam and Eve’s own nature which was sinful.

3.The Devil: The personal being who attempts to bring Christians away from Christ.

**1 Pet. 5:8:** *Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour.*

Satan holds the kingdom of the world. He genuinely offered the keys, the power of all the kingdoms of the world to Christ. We have texts supporting this spoken by Jesus, and stated by NT writers:

D. The testimony of Christ regarding Satan’s authority

**John 12:31:** *Now is the judgment of this world; now the ruler of this world will be cast out.* (Also Jn. 14:30, 16:11)

In these texts Jesus called Satan the ruler or “prince (ἄρχων, archon) of this world.” This continues with the apostles testimony.

E. The testimony of the New Testament writers regarding Satan’s authority

**Eph. 2:2:** *in which you once walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit who now works in the sons of disobedience,* (Also Eph. 6:12)

Paul calls Satan the ruler or “prince (ἄρχων, archon) of this world.”

**1 Pet. 5:8:** *Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour.*

Peter calls Satan the believer’s adversary (ἀντίδικος, antidikos), and compares Satan to a lion. Who challenges the authority of a lion? No one who wants to live! That’s why the lion is the king of the beasts.

**1 Jo. 5:19:** *We know that we are of God, and the whole world lies under the sway of the wicked one.*

John calls Satan the wicked one (πονηρός, pōneros), and says “the whole world lies (κεῖμαι, keimai) in the evil one” (meaning lies in the power of the evil one or is held in subjection by the devil).

So our talk about Satan as the god of this world, the prince of this world is verified all through these passages, even Jesus Christ verified it. Those that are not united with God in spirit, are under the power of the evil one, Satan himself. We spent a lot of time on this topic. Do you understand how Satan became the ruler in the world? Remember we talk about “in this world,” it does not mean he has authority or power over God because God has all authority. The only authority Satan has is what God gave to Adam and Satan usurped from Adam. So when you teach this to your people so they understand the unsaved world is under the power of Satan, don’t let them think Satan is equal with God. Unsaved people in this world are separated spiritually from God, and the evilness of Satan is ruling this world. When we look at the cosmos of the world, we see it is wholly evil, even as man is totally depraved. We have verses to prove this:

## **II. THE COSMOS IS WHOLLY EVIL**

**John 3:19:** *And this is the condemnation, that light is come into the world, and men loved darkness rather than light, because their deeds were evil.*

When we look at our two worlds, the world of God and the world of Satan, we understood the comparison; the world of God is light, the world of Satan is darkness. In this text, we are told that men love the darkness rather than the light because their deeds are evil.

**Rom. 3:10:** *As it is written: "There is none righteous, no, not one..."*

This is an interesting passage because, in the context, it quotes so much of the OT. We have Psalm 14 quoted, Psalm 53 quoted, Ecclesiastes 7 quoted, Psalm 5 quoted, Psalm 140 quoted, Psalm 10 quoted, Proverbs 1 quoted, Isaiah 59 quoted, Psalm 36 quoted. Paul is taking so many passages from the OT to show that the Bible clearly no one is righteous, no one seeks after God. This is not just NT truth. This was man’s description in many passages of the OT. Remember, Paul was taught by Gamaliel and was a scholar of the OT .

**2 Peter 1:4:** *by which have been given to us exceedingly great and precious promises, that through these you may be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.*

Here Peter speaks of the “*corruption of the world*,” referring to the state of pollution it is in. He is not talking about industrial pollution. He is talking about the sinful state of the world; the political pollution of sin, the social pollution of sin, the emotional pollution of sin, the driving force of the pollution of sin. Every aspect of the world of darkness is corrupted, polluted, and not what God originally created.

**James 4:4:** *Adulterers and adulteresses! Do you not know that friendship with the world is enmity with God? Whoever therefore wants to be a friend of the world makes himself an enemy of God.*

James here says the whole world is at enmity with God. So, it is clear that when we start talking about the cosmos, Satan has authority over it and as such, it is completely evil. We are looking at this from the perspective of a righteous, holy, God. When men compare look at our world, we are inclined to see good, to see beauty, to see order, and to things that are blessings. However, God sees the evil heart of man, and all mankind’s Satan prompted rebellion and consequent chaos.

*Student Question:* *Where is the term Anti-Christ mentioned Scripture, I cannot find where anti-Christ is mentioned.*

*Prof. Response:* *Okay, you are right, it is not there. In Revelation John shows there are forces acting in the world, but we will be talking about who the anti-Christ is later. There are anti-Christ today. You’ve had the course in eschatology, go back to your notes. The term we use, speaks of a supplanted Christ, a man who is an enemy of Christ and the very opposite of Christ, who seeks to take His place. There are many, but there is **the** anti-Christ. From other passages of Scripture we know the one John is speaking of here is “the” anti-Christ. That is a good observation.*

### III. SATAN'S UNDERTAKINGS IN THE COSMOS

Now we will examine Satan's undertakings in the cosmos. Much of this is repetition of what we looked at when we were describing his character and his name.

#### A. He accuses

**Job 1:11:** *"But now, stretch out Your hand and touch all that he has, and he will surely curse You to Your face!"*

In Scripture we see Satan accusing Job. It seems that even though Satan rebelled against God, he still had access to God. I confess that I do not understand this. The only answer I have is that because he usurped the authority of Adam, he was still accountable to God. In Job we see Satan is arguing that Job has been spoiled by God, that's why Job is so faithful. In essence, Satan accuses Job of "pretending faith" to continue God's blessings. Satan suggested that if God withdrew Job's blessings, he would curse God. In response, God replied to Satan *"Behold, all that he has is in your power; only do not lay a hand on his person"* (vs. 12). Yet God set the limits on what Satan can do. In that passage we see Satan under the authority of God.

When we come to our study in eschatology, we see in Revelation, a time when Satan is cast out of the presence of God, out of heaven. There are some things that are difficult to understand in the chronology of these events. I think Satan has been cast out but has to return to give account. What is mentioned in Revelation, I believe is a reflection back to Job's time.

#### B. He resists the work of God.

**Matt. 16:23:** *But He turned and said to Peter, "Get behind Me, Satan! You are an offense to Me, for you are not mindful of the things of God, but the things of men."*

When Peter denied that Jesus would suffer and die at the hands of chief priests and scribes, Jesus replied, *"Get behind Me, Satan,"* implying that Peter was resisting God's work in the manner of Satan. No matter where God's work is carried out or who carries it out, Satan is resisting God. Is Satan omnipresent? No. But when God created the innumerable angels, one third followed Satan? Does Satan have enough demons to be

busy everywhere on the planet? Yes, I think so. The angels are not omnipresent, but there are so many fallen angels, no one can escape their influence.

C. He steals and twists the Word of God.

**Gen. 3:4:** *And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die:*

**Mark 4:15:** *And these are the ones by the wayside where the word is sown. When they hear, Satan comes immediately and takes away the word that was sown in their hearts.*

We see in the Genesis account of Garden of Eden, and what Mark recorded about Satan, that he steals and twists the Word of God. We see in culture today that Satan has taken pieces of the Word of God out of context and impressed them on people to develop false cults. There are whole religions of falsehood that are influential in apostasy. For example: Satan turns the 144,000 that are before the Lord in Revelation and convinces the Jehovah Witnesses these are the true church.

D. He has a deep hatred for Christians.

**1 Pet. 5:8:** *Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour.*

The very fact Satan is described as a lion seeking to devour God's people points to his hatred of them. We can see in the OT the kings that were possessed and controlled by Satan to war against Israel. We see this also lies in the future according to the book of Revelation.

E. He works wickedness through people.

**Ex. 32:4b:** *Then they said, "This is your god, O Israel, that brought you out of the land of Egypt!"* (See also Ps. 109: 5-6, Job 4:4-10, Heb. 11:36-37, Mark 5:1-20).

Remember when the apostles were preaching and the little girl followed who was possessed by demons and disrupting the message. We also see the man of Gadarenes possessed by a legion of demons and was disrupting the message of Christ until Christ delivered him.

Prof. Question: *Are people today possessed by demons?*

Student Response: *Yes.*

Prof. Response: *The exception I believe is believers.*

Throughout Scripture the wickedness of ungodly men, founded in the wickedness of Satan, has denied God, replaced God, interrupted God's message, sought to destroy God's Word, mistreated God's people, rebuked God's people, and abused, tortured and killed God's people.

F. He works through possessions

**Joh. 13:2:** *And supper being ended, the devil having already put it into the heart of Judas Iscariot, Simon's son, to betray Him,*

**Mt. 26:15:** *...and said, "What are you willing to give me if I deliver Him to you?" And they counted out to him thirty pieces of silver. (See also Jn. 12:4-6)*

Judas, having been possessed by Satan, betrayed Jesus. He did this evil deed for thirty pieces of silver. In John 4 we see Judas's greed, and as the moneybag custodian, his pilfering of money. Scripture has many warnings about possessions. Paul sums these warnings concisely: *For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil, for which some have strayed from the faith in their greediness, and pierced themselves through with many sorrows* (1 Tim.6:10). It is evident that man's love of money and possessions is a great tool of Satan's.

G. He uses lies to his advantage.

**John 8:44:** *You are of your father the devil... and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own resources, for he is a liar and the father of it.*

(See also Acts 5:3; 2 Thess. 2:9)

These texts are self-explanatory. There are over one hundred Bible verses regarding lying. Proverbs refers to this twenty-two times and offers this succinct truth repeatedly: *A false witness will not go unpunished, And he who speaks lies will not escape* (19:5).

H. He uses disguises.

**2 Cor. 11:14:** *And no wonder! For Satan himself transforms himself into an angel of light.*

Satan transforms himself into an angel of light. Satan has the capacity to disguise himself, and therefore, so do his demons. I suggest to you that these situations in your people's lives here, they have seen a living man

seemingly taken over by a dead man who had lived in the past. That is not the dead man coming back into the living man because the Bible tells us that cannot happen. In looking at Scripture we need to understand that the ghosts or spirits of man cannot wander around and do what needs to be done.

The best illustration is when Saul went to the witch of Endor. She was to call up Samuel. When Samuel actually appeared, what was her reaction? How did she respond when she saw Samuel? She was afraid, terrified. Why would a witch, who always calls up the dead, be scared to see Samuel? The only reason is, she never called people up. She worked with the demons so they would present themselves as other people. She was a tool of Satan's deception. When she saw Samuel really, she was terrified, it had never happened before.

You need to understand it is a tactic of Satan; he is a deceiver. When your people talk about their uncles coming back, it is not their uncle, it is demons deceiving people. Could demons know the unique story, history of any individual? Yes, because they have lived all this time. So when I talk to individuals who have witnessed this in their tribal settings, these people always say something that only they would know.

A fetish priest says to Bruno, "I am your great grandfather, you know this because your great uncle, my brother lost his arm when a lion bit it off." Bruno says, "You must be my grandfather, no one else could know this!" The demons laugh saying, "We have deceived him again!" We must understand how powerful the deception of Satan is. He was even able to bring the images of all the kingdoms of the world before Jesus. I do not think he pulled out photographs to show Jesus, he displayed the images by his power.

*Prof. Question: Do you think those witch doctors, or people who claim to know about your future, tell the truth?*

*Student Response: No.*

*Prof. Response: What was the test of a true prophet in the OT?*



*It was 100% accuracy. The greatest prophets today say they are accurate 30% of the time. They just admitted they are not prophets of God.*

*Prof. Question: How can demons know the future? There are two facts that answer this question: #1 they know what they are going to do tomorrow. They know what they plan on doing to cause a war one year from now. So they can tell you through a possessed man the future, because what they are telling you are their plans for the future. The demon possessed man says "the president of Cameroon will die next year." He might even say the day, and the demon kills the president the next year on that day.*

*Does the demon have the power to do that in himself? Yes!  
Could God prevent this? Yes! That's why they are never 100% accurate.*

*The second reason is their long lives let them see histories patterns so they can predict what might happen. Even today there are people who are experts in areas of study, they know things so they can predict. For example an economist can predict what may happen, they see the trends and can predict what might take place. But are these predictions ever 100% accurate? No! They sometimes are correct/sometimes not correct. But only God knows the future. A prophet of the true God never makes an error. So do you see how in your own culture, the demons have deceived so many people? You shall know the truth; the truth shall set you free.*

*Student Response: My sister died because of the bad belief. My sister was sick, instead of taking her to the hospital, they would take her to the witch. I fought with them to take her to the hospital.*

*Prof. Response: That is very sad. Demons desire to destroy life. Do demons have the power? Yes! If God permit it? The one thing I see that God does do, He allows only a permissible measure of the deception so God's people will choose to follow and obey the Word of God. God allows chaos because He is sovereign. The challenge for God's people is to follow Him in a step of faith.*

*Any particular event is for Satan a temptation to weaken our faith, but for God a trial to strengthen our faith. We have the promise of God there*

*is no temptation we take that we cannot overcome (2 Cor. 10:13). God promises a way to escape. That way is always a step of faith.*

I. He is the master of temptation.

**1 Cor. 7:5:** *Do not deprive one another except with consent for a time, that you may give yourselves to fasting and prayer; and come together again so that Satan does not tempt you because of your lack of self-control. (See also Matt. 4; Luke 4; Gen. 3)*

In these texts Satan tempts by appealing to natural appetites such as sexual intimacy and hunger. John clearly states that Satan, the god of this world, tempts with the lust of the eyes, the lust of the flesh, and the pride of life:

**1 John 2:15-17:** *For all that is in the world — the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life — is not of the Father but is of the world.*

J. He resists continually.

**1 Chron. 21:1:** *Now Satan stood up against Israel, and moved David to number Israel.*

**Zech. 3:1:** *Then he showed me Joshua the high priest standing before the Angel of the LORD, and Satan standing at his right hand to oppose him. (See also 2 Cor. 12:7; 1 Thess. 2:18)*

We see Satan continually resists God and the work of God; there is an unrelenting resistance against God in the world. There are unrelenting wars, murders, criminal activity. There is no break. The angels are busy in their spiritual world but so are the demons.

K. He is an instrument of chastisement.

**1 Cor. 5:5:** *deliver such a one to Satan for the destruction of the flesh, that his spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord Jesus.*

**1 Tim. 1:20:** *of whom are Hymenaeus and Alexander, whom I delivered to Satan that they may learn not to blaspheme.*

In Scripture we see God occasionally using Satan to chastisement God's people. What is the purpose of chastisement? Is it punishment? No! God's chastisement us always to restore. Sometimes God allows Satan's work to bring Christians to that place where they are drawn back to God through desperation; where conviction is ignored.

#### **IV. THE END OF SATAN'S COSMOS**

**Zech. 3:2:** *And the LORD said to Satan, "The LORD rebuke you, Satan! The LORD who has chosen Jerusalem rebuke you! Is this not a brand plucked from the fire?"*

We see that this cosmos also has an end:

**1 Cor. 7:29, 31:** *But this I say, brethren, the time is short, ...For the form of this world is passing away.*

In this context it is actually talking about the relationship within marriage, but he says even in this commitment to Biblical marriage we should realize that even marriage is not the most important thing in life. Paul, in essence says: those who have wives...don't be wrapped up in this world. Don't let marriage be your priority, but make God your first priority in life. Don't be overwhelmed by sorrow and weeping. The reason for this is this world is passing away. Know that it is going to pass.

**2 Pet. 3:10:** *But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night, in which the heavens will pass away with a great noise, and the elements will melt with fervent heat; both the earth and the works that are in it will be burned up.*

Here we are told how the world will pass away and when the world will pass away. It will pass away when Jesus comes back, when the day of the Lord comes. The day of the Lord is not a 24 hour day. The day of the Lord is a series of events that take place in the future. It begins with the seven-year tribulation period. It includes the 1000 years reign of Jesus, and it ends with a new heaven and new earth. So the day of the Lord will come, and it's the conclusion; the heavens and the earth will pass away. How will they pass away? By fire. We go into more detail in our eschatology class.

**1 John 2:17:** *And the world is passing away, and the lust of it; but he who does the will of God abides forever.*

In this passage John talks about the true believer who does not love the world or the things of the world. He is talking about the influence in their lives on this earth as Christians. Our enemies are the world, the flesh and the devil. So in this context the pattern of life, the laws that govern this world under Satan, are all wicked. These all pass away. So, does the be-

liever, when entering the glory of God by death or rapture, ever sin? The answer is no! That world of influence has passed away. Believers are glorified and in the presence of God at the end of the day of the Lord.

### **SATAN'S MOTIVE**

Four milestones mark the motive of Satan

**Is. 14:14** - *"I will be like the Most High"*

**Gen 3:5** - *"You shall be as Gods"*

**Matt. 4:9** - *"Fall down and worship me"*

**2 Thess. 2:4** - *"as God sitting in the temple of God, showing himself that he is God"*

We have seen from Isaiah the five statements of "I will" expressing the pride of Satan. We summarized those into the statement: "Satan wants to replace God." In Satan's work described in Scriptures you can see this same ambition is his motive, as he seeks to control the cosmos. In Isaiah 14 he said, *"I will be like the most high God."* That was the ultimate temptation he gave Adam and Eve in Genesis 3. He said, "You won't die, you will be like God." In Matthew 4 when Satan was tempting Christ, showing Him all the kingdoms, he said, "Bow down to me and I will give the kingdoms to you." In saying "Bow down to me" his motive is evident; he wants to replace God.

We again see Satan's motive in 2 Thessalonians 2. Here Satan is called the man of sin, the son of perdition. And it says he will sit as in the temple to be worshipped even as God. This will be part of his activity and deception during the tribulation period, when he has power.

### **SATAN'S METHODS**

#### **I. SATAN METHOD OF BEGUILING EVE**

**Gen. 3:1-5:** *Now the serpent was more cunning than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said to the woman, "Has God indeed said, "You shall not eat of every tree of the garden"?" And the woman said to the serpent, "We may eat the fruit of the trees of the garden; "but of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God has said, "You shall not eat it, nor shall you touch it, lest you die." Then the serpent said to the woman, "You will not surely die. "For God knows that*

*in the day you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil."*

Satan's deception of humankind involved three steps:

1. Satan Doubt God's Word - "*hath God said*"
2. Satan Distort God's Word - "*every tree*"
3. Satan Deny God's Word - "*you shall not die*"

We see of course, how Satan has already used his method of deception in the garden of Eden. He doubted God's Word, he distorted God's Word and then he denied God's Word. We need to see that Satan's motives and tactics are always against the Word of God. He wants people to not trust the Word of God and to deny the Word of God as the truth. That is a good passage to preach to help people understand how any work that undermines the Word of God is a work of Satan.

In Canada there is a church that, because of the charismatic influence, began to focus on all these external charismatic experiences. It was called the Airport Church, a part of the Vineyard movement in America. This was a movement to acknowledge that miracles, wonders and signs are still for today, to bring people to Christ. For a few minutes I watch one of the worship services on TV to see what was going on. It was bizarre. They had people who were supposedly "in the spirit" running around the auditorium. They ran, and ran, and ran. They claimed they were running in the power of the Spirit of God.

There were people in the congregation who were falling on the ground and crying out "in tongues." The pastor had a group of people on the platform and was telling them to laugh in the Holy Spirit. One man fell down to pray, and the pastor pulled him up and said it is not a time to pray, it is a time to laugh. Thousands of people came to the church to find Jesus. They were claiming they could heal people, claiming they could tell the future. All these bizarre things. I watched about five minutes and all I saw was absolute chaos. It is interesting that because the church grew so fast, the news people wanted to interview people to see what was going on. A taxi driver who had started to go there was coming out of the church and was interviewed. The reporter asked him what was so special about this

church. He said, “We are so close to God that we don’t even need the Bible.” Instantly I knew that is was not the work of God. That is the work of Satan. Anything that undermines the Word of God and brings people to the conclusion that they do not need the Word of God, is not the work of God, but the work of Satan.

## II. SATAN’S TACTICS OF DECEPTION

We have this tactic of Satan’s right from the very beginning of creation, attacking the Word of God before Adam and Eve. He does this in many different ways.

**1 Tim. 4:1-3:** *Now the Spirit expressly says that in latter times some will depart from the faith, giving heed to deceiving spirits and doctrines of demons, speaking lies in hypocrisy, having their own conscience seared with a hot iron, forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from foods which God created to be received with thanksgiving by those who believe and know the truth.*

What will cause some people to depart from the faith? Here we are told it is seducing demons that speak lies and do not tell the truth. Even those who are Christians will be deceived by demons who possess other individuals who preach against the Scriptures. So these demons are speaking lies but replacing the Word of God with these doctrines. Some of them, he goes on to explain, were teaching to forbid marriage. Have there been any religions that forbidding marriage is a holy calling? Roman Catholicism has practiced this, priests and their nuns are forbidden to marry. Where did they get that teaching? Well, here it is called the doctrine of demons.

**2 Peter 2:1:** *But there were also false prophets among the people, even as there will be false teachers among you, who will secretly bring in destructive heresies, even denying the Lord who bought them, and bring on themselves swift destruction.*

Again we see false prophets and false teachers giving destructive heresies; they are replacing the Bible, giving false heresy. Are there false prophets and false teachers today? Yes, of course.

**1 John 2:22:** *Who is a liar but he who denies that Jesus is the Christ? He is antichrist who denies the Father and the Son.*

We see in this passage, the anti-Christ denies who Jesus is (vs. 22). If we go back to verse 18, we are told there are many anti-Christ's even as there is one anti-Christ coming. Again, the teaching that Jesus Christ is not who He is; He is not the Son, He is not the Saviour of the world, is the teaching of "anti-Christ." Has this teaching been around? Yes, from the beginning of the church, and it will get its highest and greatest expression when "the" anti-Christ is on the earth.

**1 John 4:1:** *Beloved, do not believe every spirit, but test the spirits, whether they are of God; because many false prophets have gone out into the world.*

John is talking about the Spirit of God working in our lives at the end of chapter 3. We know we abide in Christ as the Spirit confirms this in our lives. But John says, test the spirits because many false prophets have gone out into the world. There is a relationship between the spirits that go out into the world and the false prophets. How do we test the spirits? Scriptures give direction in this:

**Heb. 5:14:** *But solid food belongs to those who are of full age, that is, those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.*

This tells us how we discern between good and evil. We pursue the deeper truths of the Word of God, the solid food. We practice the labour of studying and applying the Word of God. As we grow in the Word of God, as we study, memorize, deepen our knowledge, we will be able to discern good and evil. We have now just discovered why American "Christianity" is weakened and without discernment. In American churches, the general practice is less and less Bible being taught. This is not true for every church, but generally speaking evangelical churches are spending less time teaching the Word of God and more time singing, fellowshiping, entertaining and doing all things that are not bad in themselves, but they are not learning the Word of God.

The church that I pastored in Canada had adult Sunday School classes for adults and children before the worship service. In the worship service I taught (more than preached) the Bible for 35-40 minutes. We had a Sunday evening service where I taught for almost a whole hour. We had a prayer meeting on Wednesday night where I taught or shared the word for 15-20 minutes. We also had small groups where our church would meet in homes during the week and study the Bible together.

Today that same church has no Sunday School, no evening service, the pastor preaches for thirty minutes in the morning, but that is all. They have a prayer meeting, and they have some small groups. So, they have gone from 4 hours of studying the Word of God to perhaps 1 or 2 hours. Now the teaching is good, but the quantity of teaching has dropped significantly.

This has become the pattern in most American churches, where, according to statistics, people watch over 30 hours of television each week. You see why, in America, Christians fail to grasp the meat of the Word of God. As a result you find people who claim they are Christians but their lifestyle is totally opposite to what God says it should be. I pray that in Africa you will do nothing to replace the teaching of the Word of God, even if it is something good.

*Student Response: Someone commented in my church that I preached too long. They wanted 15 minutes, but I said no, I teach 45 minutes each Sunday.*

## LECTURE 11

And now we want to look at the way in which Satan brings corruption into his domain. So this is section 3 under Satan's methods.

### III. SATAN'S TACTICS OF CORRUPTION

**Eph. 6:11-12:** *Put on the whole armor of God, that you may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of*



*the darkness of this age, against spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places.*

Although we looked at these passages before, lets remind ourselves of Satan's corruption indicated here. The phrase "the wiles of the devil" has the idea of 'scheming.' Satan's work is not just spontaneous; he has a plan for destroying the work of God. Remember he's not all knowledge, but he is very intelligent. He plans, he schemes, and he devises means and ways to corrupt all that God created.

**1 John 2:16:** *For all that is in the world — the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life — is not of the Father but is of the world.*

You see in the experience of Satan and his demons watching humanity he knows other people influence other people. We are greatly influenced by how other people act. We all have our people we admire, our heroes. So Satan can take his own people that are unsaved and make them successful so others admire them, building in them the lust of the eyes, the lust of the flesh, and the pride of life. So when we look at the corruption Satan inflicts in the world, with scheming and pressure from other people, the world system is alluring even to Christians. We learn from Scripture this lure can be more than opposition, it can be bondage. Satan, by lusts and pride, holds people in bondage.

#### **IV. SATAN'S TACTICS OF BONDAGE**

**Rom. 6:16:** *Do you not know that to whom you present yourselves slaves to obey, you are that one's slaves whom you obey, whether of sin leading to death, or of obedience leading to righteousness?*

Paul says the one you yield to is the one you will obey, that's how we are in bondage. The world, the unsaved people, have no choice, they are in the bondage of Satan. They haven't got the power to resist within them from being alive to God through the abiding Spirit. To be able to overcome this yielding is insurmountable to unbelievers. In Romans 6 Paul explains that the believer, whose old man is crucified with Christ, have a choice.

**Eph. 2:1,2:** *And you He made alive, who were dead in trespasses and sins, in which you once walked according to the course of this world, according*

*to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit who now works in the sons of disobedience,*

In this passage different words are used, “yielding” is not used, but the word “walk” is used. The “walk” indicates the pattern of life of individuals. The description of being dead in trespasses and walking according to the power of the prince of the air shows the bondage that is there. Yet, Paul reminds the Ephesian Church that they have been made alive together with Christ:

**Eph. 2:4-5:** *But God, who is rich in mercy, because of His great love with which He loved us, even when we were dead in trespasses, made us alive together with Christ (by grace you have been saved)*

**Heb. 2:15:** *and release those who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage.*

Here we have seen that Satan does not carry the sword of death; therefore it is not his choice who is to die. Yet, he is the instrument. God can use Satan to deliver death. This passage shows how Satan can use the idea of death to hold people in bondage.

*Prof. Question:* *What is it in this verse that holds people in bondage with the idea of death? What is the word? What is the actual point of that in this verse that holds people.*

*Student Response:* *Fear*

*Prof. Response:* *Yes, fear of death. Do you understand what I am saying when I say the sword of death that Satan holds is not choosing who will die?*

*Here's a verse to mark down:*

**Rev. 1:18:** *“I am He who lives, and was dead, and behold, I am alive forevermore. Amen. And I have the keys of Hades and of Death.”*

*Jesus is speaking. Jesus, the one who was dead, then alive, is the one who holds the keys to death and hell.*

*So when we look at these bondage texts, Romans 6 “the one you yield to,” Ephesians 2 “the walk according to Satan’s path,” Hebrews. 2 “being in bondage to the fear of death,” You must realize that there is deliverance.*

*For each of these avenues of bondage, the believer has a choice to make. And there are texts of Scripture that show the believer what his response should be to these things because he has been delivered. Your homework for the class is to think of a text that applies to the Christian which responds to each of these kinds of bondage. This will be a little more difficult, you cannot look it up in a concordance, you have to think this through. It should help you when you look at Romans; the bondage there is indicates who you yield to. In Ephesians the idea is where your walk should be. Hebrews 2 indicates what holds people in bondage is fear. What I'm asking for is a text of Scripture that gives the Christian the answer for not yielding to Satan; a text that shows us why we do not have to walk, or what we do when persuaded to walk the way Satan walks in the world; and a text that gives instruction about fear. This is not research homework so have this prepared for Monday.*

We have been looking at Satan's cosmos. We have been addressing his tactics and his deceptions and his methods. When we teach this to people, they may be discouraged, so we have to help them realize that Satan has already been dealt with. We want to be reminded that the Bible teaches Satan is judged.

## **SATAN JUDGED**

### **I. SATAN JUDGED IN THE CROSS**

#### **A. The defeat of Satan was prophesied**

The defeat of Satan by Christ was prophesied at man's original fall: **Gen 3:15:** *And I will put enmity Between you and the woman, And between your seed and her Seed; He shall bruise your head, And you shall bruise His heel.*

This is the first text in the Bible that indicates Satan will be judged and defeated. The passage prophesies that the seed of the woman and the seed of the serpent would be in conflict. The one gets the wounded head (the defeat of Satan), the other gets the wounded heel (the victory of the cross).

Immediately after sin entered into the world, there is the prophecy that Satan's wickedness would be looked after. So when we come to the NT we see the result of that promise.

## B. Satan will overcome by Christ

The destructive influence of Satan will be overcome by Christ's work of redemption and reconciliation. In Genesis we see the prophecy that Satan's domain will be defeated, and that he will be defeated. 4000 years later, Paul's writings give us Romans 8.

**Rom 8:21-22:** *...the creation itself also will be delivered from the bondage of corruption into the glorious liberty of the children of God. For we know that the whole creation groans and labors with birth pangs together until now.*

Paul mentions that creation is groaning like a woman in the travail of childbirth. It is a good illustration because when a woman goes through the pains of birth, she is anticipating the birth of the child. No woman likes the pain. I was with my wife as she was going through the delivery of each of our children. I praise God that he chose women to bear children, not men. Nevertheless, despite my wife's pain, it was a joyful time for each of us.

Paul is saying the world now is not the way God intended it to be. What is the principle operating in our world? Death. In God's world the principle is life. So, in this passage Paul is not saying humanity is waiting for redemption. No, he is saying all of creation is waiting because in the sin of Adam, all of creation was affected. Therefore all creation awaits redemption!

**Col. 1:19-20:** *For it pleased the Father that in Him [Jesus] all the fullness should dwell, and by Him to reconcile all things to Himself, by Him, whether things on earth or things in heaven, having made peace through the blood of His cross.*

You notice that in these two passages some of the terms used for our salvation are also used for the world, for the entire creation. In Romans 8 we have the term "adoption," and we have the term "redemption." In Colossians 1 we have the word "reconciliation." So when Paul is writing to Rome and to the church at Colossi, he is showing that Christ's work of redemption for humanity is also the redemption for the world. He is saying to the Colossian church that the work of the salvation in Christ not only to

reconciled people, but reconciles all things to God. Paul is careful to relate the promise from Genesis to all of creation that is seen and experienced.

### C. The domain of Satan's influence is spoiled by the Cross

Satan is not only judged but his influence and the effect of all the wickedness he brings will be reconciled and restored when Jesus comes to conquer. When I teach the class in eschatology, I talk about Adam's eschatology. He lost paradise because of his sin, he was cast out of the garden. But Adam believed the promise that the seed of the woman would defeat the seed of the serpent. In his thinking at that time, his eschatology, was not just salvation restored, his eschatology was to see paradise, to see all of creation restored. So with Paul, he is tapping into that promise to encourage the Christians in Rome and Colossi. Paul confirms this further in Colossians.

**Col. 2:14, 15:** *...having wiped out the handwriting of requirements that was against us, which was contrary to us. And He has taken it out of the way, having nailed it to the cross. Having disarmed principalities and powers, He made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them in it.*

Again all Satan's influence, the principalities and powers that he persuades and controls, will all be disarmed in the cross. First we see the promise or the prophecy of the defeat, and then we see the execution of this in the work of Christ on the cross.

So now we come to point II where this execution of Satan's judgments is looked at from the divine perspective.

## II. THE EXECUTION OF SATAN'S JUDGMENTS

### A. Three judgments already passed by virtue of Satan's fall

#### 1. Satan's moral degradation and consequent loss of standing.

When Satan fell, he lost his position, his first place. Go back to what we talked about with the kind of righteousness that created beings have. He was confirmed in his imperfection, confirmed in his wickedness. So that's the first judgement--Moral degradation and consequently the loss of his standing; he became an evil being. He was confirmed that way.

That was a judgement of God, even as Adam was told that if he eats this fruit he will die or "in dying he would die." When we think of man, we think of spiritual death and physical death as a consequence of sin. For

man there is salvation provided. But for the angels there was only spiritual death because they don't have bodies. Because each angel made the choice themselves, that was the confirmation into their wicked existence. So that was a judgement of God.

2. God's sentence pronounced against him in the Garden of Eden.

In Gen. 3:15 God also pronounced against him about the final judgement to come. He will be defeated by the seed of the woman. That was a judgmental decree against Satan, even at the same time God judged the serpent; God at the same time judged nature in terms of death, and God at the same time judged Adam and Eve. So when I'm talking about this kind of a judgement, I'm talking about a judge who pronounces judgment even though the execution of that judgment was not immediate.

3. The judgment of the Cross.

The third judgement was the judgement that Paul wrote about in Colossians and Romans; when Christ died on the cross and rose again, the judgement fell on Satan. So we see these statements of judgement, these pronouncements of judgement.

Then we have texts that indicate the judgements that are executed on Satan.

B. Three judgments executed upon Satan

1. Satan Cast out of Heaven

**Rev. 12:9:** *So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the Devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world; he was cast to the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.*

In this passage's context we see that the war broke out and the angels fought with the dragon and his angels. Satan is cast out of heaven. It is difficult to determine the timing of this war. Because Revelation 12 begins with a picture of the history of Israel. The woman clothed with the sun, is obviously the nation Israel (vs. 1). From verse 1 to 5 it basically traces the history of Israel. It is difficult from verse 6 on to determine if this is the future or sometime in the past. The key for me is that in verse 6 it speaks of a period of 1260 days. That is significant in that it represents the 3½ years or halfway through the tribulation period. It seems to

me, in this context, that the war which broke is in the middle of the tribulation. And this fits clearly into John 12:31.

**John 12:31-33:** *"Now is the judgment of this world; now the ruler of this world will be cast out. "And I, if I am lifted up from the earth, will draw all peoples to Myself." This He said, signifying by what death He would die.*

What is the context of John 12? Jesus has just entered the city with people celebrating His raising of Lazarus. Jesus shares His coming crucifixion with His disciples and speaks of the necessity for a grain to die order to bear fruit.. In verse 27 Jesus is troubled because the cross is imminent. At the point where he is troubled, Jesus says: "Father, glorify Your name" (vs. 28). Then a voice from heaven is heard saying, "*I have both glorified it, and will glorify it again.*"

In response to the audible message, Jesus says, "*This voice did not come because of Me, but for your sake.*" Then Jesus makes the statement of judgment. He is specific: *Now "is"* (present tense verb indicating action now in progress) *the judgment of this world; now the ruler of this world "will be"* (future tense verb indicating action occurring in the future) *cast out.* Blum explains:

The **voice** from heaven confirmed faith in the spiritually perceptive but to the unspiritual it was only a noise (1 Cor. 2:14). Jesus' death on the cross was a **judgment on the world**. Evil was atoned for. The world's goals, standards, and religions were shown to be folly. The Cross was also the means of Satan's defeat (Rev. 12:10). **The prince of this world** (i.e., Satan; cf. John 14:30; 16:11), **Jesus said, will be driven out.** His power over people by sin and death was defeated and they can now be delivered out of his domain of spiritual darkness and slavery to sin (Col. 1:13–14; Heb. 2:14–15).<sup>18</sup>

We see the judgement of Satan is certain. His "power of sin" is broken in the cross, and He will be removed from his influences in heaven and on

---

<sup>18</sup> Blum, E. A. (1985). John. In J. F. Walvoord & R. B. Zuck (Eds.), *The Bible Knowledge Commentary: An Exposition of the Scriptures* (J. F. Walvoord & R. B. Zuck, Ed.) (Jn 12:30–31). Wheaton, IL: Victor Books.

earth. In the OT and the NT we see the judgment is finalized in the second advent of Christ.

*Student Question: Is Satan in prison in heaven or on earth, I am confused.*

*Prof. Response: In reality I cannot make it any clearer because I'm not certain myself of the timing. We definitely know the earth is now Satan's abode because he is the god of this world. But we also know he has access to heaven (book of Job) and as I said before, I'm inclined to think his access to heaven now has to do with the fact that he is accountable to God because he has usurped authority of this world.*

*So was the cross and the resurrection, the point of the battle that took place in heaven to cast out Satan, or is that yet to come in the tribulation period? I'm inclined to think it is at the 1/2 way point of the tribulation period. That is the point at which the two beasts appear, the anti-Christ and the false prophet, that's the point where Satan seems to focus on becoming the king of the world. Where he comes in and takes over the temple, or at least takes the place of the worship of God among the people of the world. That's where I'm inclined to believe, but it is possible from Rev. 12, for there to be a distinction between vs. 6, the timing and vs. 7, the war. It could be a reflection back to the cross again. There is room for that to be in the grammar.*

*The point that we need to make is the certainty of his defeat. And the fact that he is active in the world now yet under a condemnation that he cannot escape. That's why I see that in the last part of the tribulation, Satan acting in absolute desperation. His time is running out. Does that help? It is difficult for us who think chronologically. We think chronologically. Americans think chronologically, according to the time.*

*Africans think according to the season. Isn't that true? The next rains are a time measurement. When I look around, how many people have watches? A few of you. If you go to America, practically everyone has a watch. If you were to ask an American about when it will rain, they don't know and they don't care. We have food whether it rains or not.*



*But the Hebrew mind does not think chronologically, it is not part of the Hebrew tradition. You have to keep this in mind when Jesus is giving his sermons. Who the audience is makes a big difference. When we see events prophesied in the OT, and Jesus repeats these, it is often in the order of importance, not in the order of chronology. When you study the Olivet discourse, where the disciples ask him about the temple; how wonderful it is and when will your kingdom be established? Jesus answers, making reference to things that will transpire in the tribulation period.*

*Christ is preaching and answering the apostles who are Jewish people and most of the people who were listening were Jewish people. Therefore, the order of events that are in the Olivet Discourse do not harmonize with the order of events in Revelation. But when you realize that Christ is preaching to the Hebrews, He is not giving a chronological order, but an order of severity of events. You can compare the records in these books. I have done this and wrote a paper to show the events are there, just not in the same order.*

*Student Question:* *In page 23, Romans 8:20-24, you use the term adoption and redemption. Can you explain how it works in the context of Rom. 8?*

*Prof. Response:* *In Romans 8, Paul is concluding his remarks about Sanctification, began in chapter 6. He begins with “there is no condemnation,” emphasizing that that salvation brings such great blessings and deliverance from the law. We are free from the old nature and free from the law. Our salvation is the work of God (Rom.3-5). Our sanctification is a work of God (Rom 6-8) As the objects of God’s phenomenal love. In verse 27 the Spirit makes intercession for us. Within the context, Paul is giving the greatness of our salvation. He makes the statement in verse 18 “the suffering in the present age is nothing compared to the glory we will see.” So he makes the simple statement that as we look for this great moment; our glorification, the completion of our salvation, the whole earth is also awaiting the completion of salvation’s renewal. That is what 8:20-24 is about, the whole earth awaits physical redemption even as believers await the adoption and redemption of their bodies.*

Student Question: My problem is the execution of the judgement. You gave what happened, but I was confused.

Prof. Response: Under this heading, the execution of Satan's judgments, Point A, the judgement is already passed. This is the pronouncement of the present judgement upon Satan's power of sin. The judge says, "This is your judgement; Christ defeated your stronghold of sin over man. The sin nature of the believer died on the cross with Christ. The seed of the woman defeated you." Both in the NT and in the OT, the defeat by the seed of the woman is declared to be the work of the Messiah on the cross.

In Point B, three judgements are executed upon Satan. The first we have covered: He is "cast out" by the cross presently by losing the power of sin over all humankind and ultimately into the lake of fire. Then in Point 2 (which we have not examined as yet), we will see at the second advent of Christ, a physical removal of Satan. This 1000 years is the reign of Christ on earth. Instead of Satan binding people, God has bound him in the pit. Point 3 is the final judgement of Satan, when he and his demons are cast into the lake of fire. This is not immediate, it is prophesied, it is clarified and then it is executed.

Student Question: I apologize for a lot of question, but I do not want to go back to my country of Chad in ignorance.

Prof. Response: If you do, you still have the Bible and can remove the ignorance with your own study.

Student Response: I understand demons do not possess the saved, but demons can influence those who are saved.

Translator answered the question: "I believe you answered that because you said you have a choice being in Christ now, to choose to work with God or to yield to his temptation, but however, I will let you answer the question.

Prof. Response: You are you talking about point B?

Student Response: Yes, if the influence of Satan has been destroyed, or surmounted on the cross, why are we still influenced today?

*Prof. Response: Okay, the point I make here relates to the world, the prophecy that was made in Genesis 3 is for the whole world that will be redeemed.*

*What I am trying to show you is the Scriptures teach about the judgment of Satan. From the perspective of the world, these texts show that salvation is the answer. When we come to our study of demons next week we will talk about casting out demons and whether Christians can be possessed or not.*

*The answer to your question has more to do with your homework than the text we are looking at. Your homework is to answer how Satan holds people in bondage, and why Christians have an escape. Now we want to finish this idea of Satan's judgments at the second advent*

## 2. Satan's Judgment at the Second Advent of Christ.

**Isaiah 24: 21-22:** *It shall come to pass in that day That the LORD will punish on high the host of exalted ones, And on the earth the kings of the earth. They will be gathered together, As prisoners are gathered in the pit, And will be shut up in the prison; After many days they will be punished.*

In this passage we have a phrase that is the most significant in eschatology: "that day." In the OT it is the most significant term regarding eschatology. "That day" is the same as "the day of the Lord." "That day" or "the day of the Lord" is always a reference to the second coming of Christ. When you study this phase in the OT you will see the term "that day" has two distinct characteristics. There is turmoil, suffering, upheaval in the world; severe weather, natural calamities, and wars. You will see passages in the OT that talk about this terrible time. You will also see that the OT talks about Messiah's reign; a time of peace; a time where creation itself is not struggling with turmoil, a time when even the wilderness will produce plants and food. In essence, "that day" or "the day of the Lord" is about Christ's coming and the terrible troubles that will precede Christ's coming.

From the NT we see this time includes the 7 year tribulation and then the 1000 year reign of Christ. Isaiah says that in "that day" the Lord will punish on high the hosts of exalted ones. What are the host of the exalted

ones? Satan and the demons will be judged. You will see in the NT that Satan has his anti-Christ in power during the tribulation, but at the point of Christ actually descending on the earth, He speaks a word and the beast is destroyed. What happens to Satan himself? Satan is put in the pit for 1000 years. He is in bondage for 1000 years. This 1000 years is the reign of Christ on earth. Instead of Satan binding people, God has bound him in the pit.

Instead of believers being aliens in a wicked world, believers are the true citizens, and the unsaved are the aliens in this righteous world. The above Isaiah text is talking about the second coming of Jesus Christ, when Satan is bound for 1000 years, and the people empowered by him are cast out of that kingdom. Only the righteous enter into the millennial kingdom. The rest are in hell awaiting the final judgement.

**2 Thess. 2:8-10:** *And then the lawless one will be revealed, whom the Lord will consume with the breath of His mouth and destroy with the brightness of His coming. The coming of the lawless one is according to the working of Satan, with all power, signs, and lying wonders, and with all unrighteous deception among those who perish, because they did not receive the love of the truth, that they might be saved.*

We have here the mystery of the lawless one. We are talking about the anti-Christ, and it says the Lord will consume him with the breath of His mouth. We are talking about the tribulation period where the beast and the false prophet, under the power of the dragon, are strong especially at the end of the tribulation period. And again here, the Lord speaks and the false prophet is already dead, he speaks and anti-Christ now is dead and his body is in the ground and his soul/spirit is in Hades waiting the final judgement. I cannot remember; it could be that at that moment the anti-Christ is judged and cast into the lake of fire, or if He waits until the end.

**Rev. 20:1-3:** *Then I saw an angel coming down from heaven, having the key to the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. He laid hold of the dragon, that serpent of old, who is the Devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years; and he cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal on him, so that he should deceive the nations no more till*

*the thousand years were finished. But after these things he must be released for a little while.*

This text speaks of Satan being bound. Just to correct me, if you go back to chapter 19, you see the beast and the false prophet are at that time cast into the fire. So the beast and the false prophet at the end of the tribulation are judged and cast into the lake of fire. Satan is bound there for 1000 years during the time of Christ's millennial kingdom. This world is now represented by the characteristics of God's, life, righteousness, light, and all those other things I was talking about.

### 3. Satan's Final Judgment

**Rev. 20:10:** *The devil, who deceived them, was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone where {NU-Text and M-Text add also. } the beast and the false prophet are. And they will be tormented day and night forever and ever.*

After 1000 years Satan is released. Even though this has been a 1000 year reign of righteousness and peace, there are natural people born during this period who do not believe in Christ as Saviour. When Satan is released from the pit, he goes about his business to deceive these people and battle against the King Jesus. It is a short battle because the Lord speaks, and they are gone. At that point Satan is now cast into the lake of fire for ever and ever. Then we have the destruction of the world by fire, the white throne judgment, and the new heaven and new earth with God's people forever reigning with Christ.

We have the promise that Satan is judged. The judgment is not complete yet but is absolutely certain because God has said so. He's pronounced the judgement and nothing can deter it. Even though Satan is the god of this world, God has people living in this world who are born by grace. Believers are the first citizens of the kingdom to come. We are the first citizens of the new covenant.

In closing our study of Satanology, we want to see from Scripture Satan's limitation toward God's people now.

## SATAN'S LIMIT

**Mt. 10:28:** *And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell*

**1 Jo. 4:4:** *You are of God, little children, and have overcome them, because He who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.*

**Jas. 4:7:** *Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.*

We have Matthew 10 where Christ says do not fear Satan. Rather, we are to fear the Lord. What does Proverbs teach about fearing the Lord? The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge. This is the believer's direction of fear, reverence, and loyalty.

What does 1 John 4:4 say? John says, "greater is God is in us than Satan in the world." Believers need not bow to Satan and his wicked schemes.

This concludes our study of Satanology. We hopefully have understood how, even though we are saved and reunited in spirit with God, we still have critical choices to make. Our mind needs to be renewed (programmed) by the Word of God. On Monday we will begin our look at demonology. Much of it is repeated, but we will be talking about the Christian's role with spirits and demons.

Are there questions regarding Satanology?

*Student Question:* Which came first, the fall of Satan or the creation of man?

*Prof. Response:* Ernest has the answer.

*Student Response:* Satan fell before man was created. I remembered Satan was created the first day and man created the sixth day. I believe Satan fell before man came.

*Prof. Response:* The text that taught us that is in Ezekiel. What were the angels doing during that time of creation? They were created on the first day. They were rejoicing, praising God as they saw the creation. Now from

my perspective, there is no hint other than all the angels watching all of creation to see the great handiwork of God. What was the high point, the most unique aspect of creation?

Man was made the center of all creation. In the NT we see that it is angels that are looking on the world and marveling at salvation and the creation of man.

I bow to you Dr. Earnest. That answer is very good. You are thinking biblically and I am very pleased.

## LECTURE 12

### DEMONOLOGY

As we start demonology you will see much of the teaching is of course the same as Satanology. My approach is to remind us how demons, their character and their activities are the same as Satan's. Then we will look at texts of Scripture to give us understanding in the areas where we have misunderstanding. For example, can Christians cast out demons from people? Can Christians be possessed? Can God's people heal?

#### Introduction

I begin with Chafer's introduction to Demonology:

With reference to Satan's authority over the *cosmos*, the statement is direct and final He is said to be the *god of this age* (2 Cor. 4:4), "the prince of this world" (*cosmos*), the one who energizes the children of disobedience, the one rightly styled *the power of darkness*, and *the wicked one* in whose authority the whole *cosmos* resides. In like manner, it is said of Satan's throne—the throne of the earthly sphere—that it is on the earth (cf. Rev. 2:13). The same satanic authority is declared in Ephesians 6:12. Thus it is written: "For our wrestling is not against flesh and blood, but against the principalities, against the powers, against the world-rulers of this darkness, against the spiritual hosts of wickedness in the heavenly places" (R.V.).

That the demons do the will of their king is everywhere assured in the Scriptures. It is also revealed that they render wholehearted and willing cooperation in the satanic project. To this they were evidently commit-

ted when they left their first estate as unfallen angels (2 Pet. 2:4; Jude 1:6). This service apparently reaches out to the universe wherever Satan's authority extends. Satan, though proposing to supersede the Almighty, is not omnipotent; but his power and the extent of his activity are immeasurably increased by the cooperation of his host of demons. Satan is not omniscient; yet his knowledge is greatly extended by the combined wisdom and observation of his sympathetic subjects. Satan is not omnipresent; but he is able to maintain an unceasing activity in every locality by the loyal obedience of the satanic host.<sup>19</sup>

## SATAN'S SPIRIT LABOURERS

### I. Their Origin: Created beings at some time past

**Ex. 20:11:** *For in six days the LORD made the heavens and the earth, the sea, and all that is in them, and rested the seventh day. Therefore the LORD blessed the Sabbath day and hallowed it.*

But before we do that, let's look at our notes and look at Satan's spiritual labourers. Again we are reminded that they as Satan are created beings. And we know from Ex. 20:11 they were created within the first six days of creation. And what day were they created? What is the text for that? Job 38:6, 7; Exodus 20.

### II. Their Fall

The fall of demons was likely synonymous with that of Lucifer's.

**Luke 10:18:** *And He said to them, "I saw Satan fall like lightning from heaven.*

**Rev. 12:4a:** *His tail drew a third of the stars of heaven and threw them to the earth.*

Here we see that all the angels were created at the same time, and the angels that fell were part of that host. We assume that their fall was synonymous with that of Lucifer's. We are told 1/3 fell to become evil demons along with Satan.

---

<sup>19</sup>Lewis Sperry Chafer, Systematic Theology, vol. 2 (Grand Rapids, MI: Kregel Publications, 1993),.



### III. Their Number

**Rev. 5:11:** *Then I looked, and I heard the voice of many angels around the throne, the living creatures, and the elders; and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands,*

Some scholars take this literally to be the number of angels that were at the beginning, and there are those who look at this as hyperbole. On the basis of this number they figure out from Rev. 5:11 that 1/3 of the angels fell. And so when they take 1/3 of *ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands*, and come up with 51,500,000 angels.

Now I've taken this number from a commentary of a man who believes this is a literal number. Actually, the mathematics is very poor. I personally think this number is a hyperbole because we are told in another text that they are innumerable (Heb. 12:22). But the thing I want you to see with 1/3 of the angels becoming demons is that there are enough fallen angels to inflict great harm to every individual on the earth. The commentary suggests that for every Christian, there are 5 demons attached to them.

Again, to me that is not good theology. But if it helps us become aware that we are in a warfare with enemies all around us, it is worth the exaggeration. So if we stop here and see what the Bible says about demons; they are evil, they have the same character as Satan, they are actively involved against the work of God, they are innumerable, then we are well informed of their present influence against the work of God.

### IV. Their Work

#### A. They Possess People:

**Matt. 8:28:** *When He had come to the other side, to the country of the Gergesenes, there met Him two demon-possessed men, coming out of the tombs, exceedingly fierce, so that no one could pass that way.*

**Mark 16:9:** *Now when He rose early on the first day of the week, He appeared first to Mary Magdalene, out of whom He had cast seven demons.* (See also Matt. 9:32; Matt. 12:22; Matt. 15:22-29; Matt. 17:14-18; Matt. 4:24).

The next point talks about their work of possessing people. We are not given as much information about the demons as we have about Satan himself. But when we see the activity of the demons especially in the gospels,

it amounts to possession. This does not mean this is the only thing they do, but this is the emphasis of the gospels.

*Prof. Question: Why do you suppose there was so much evident demon activity in the gospels?*

*Student Response: Because of the presence of the Lord Jesus.*

*Prof. Response: Exactly! Remember their labour is on the earth and they want to destroy the work of God so when the Son of God came to the earth Satan and his demons would concentrate their actions where Jesus was on the earth. That's a tactic of warfare. Find the strength of your enemy and put all your forces on that to destroy it. So we see in many texts I gave, the fact that Satan's host were very active in and around where Christ was ministering. We will take more of a closer look at this and what the demons did in their possession. It is good to be aware that when Christ was on the earth, Satan was particularly attacking Him and seeking to weaken Him. God became man. Satan was able to defeat the first man God created, so I think in his mind, as intelligent as he is, he thought he had opportunity here to destroy God. The passage we see where Satan is tempting Christ is only a glimpse because it says he went away for only a while.*

So we have other texts under point B that expand the work of the demons in other parts of Scripture. You can see if you go through these texts on your own time, that demons are involved in promoting error, in deceiving people, in lying, in witchcraft, in heresies. They were actively involved in false teaching and prophecies.

We talked how demons and Satan can influence people to pretend they can prophesy the future. One way of course, is they can make it look like a prediction if they just plan one year from day to kill someone. I could do the same thing: I prophecy that Bruno in one week will receive 1000 dollars. And one week from today, I give him \$1000. That's not prophecy, it is just planning. Oh Bruno, don't get excited, it is not going to happen!

You can see how demons are still limited to the will of God, and He may not allow them to do what they plan. That's why "prophets" today are just 30% accurate. They have some measure of success in prophecy because they are wise enough to predict the outcome of certain things. Even people with special training and understanding can do that.

When I am home in Canada and turn on the TV to listen to the news, I wait for the weather report and the weatherman has a map and shows the weather that is coming from Saskatchewan and coming toward our province. He says, "Today and tomorrow we will have sun, but on Monday we will get much rain." They have satellites to see where the weather is going. But if he were able to see this 100 years ago, he would be called a prophet.

The demons do not need satellites to know where the weather is going. There are things that are deceptions and even the prophecies are predictions that will never be 100% accurate. We could go through all these texts, but I think we have covered it enough under Satan. He is a liar; a deceiver. He is a being who promotes false teaching leads individuals to teach his heresies. So that's a summary of demons. I think church history shows us that demons are more active in some areas of the world depending on how much influence they have had in the past.

*Prof. Question: So just take a moment and discuss how are demon activities seen in Cameroon or Chad or wherever you are from?*

*Student Response: -The different cults that used to be here. The demon took the opportunity to lie to us and it became the culture. -Sorcerers active in Cameroon. -People who are capable of making rain come down. Maybe it is like you said, they live so long, they are used to the weather. But people keep paying them money.*

*Prof. Question: Did Satan have power to send fire down to destroy the possessions of Job?*

*Yes, did he have the power to send the wind to destroy all the children?*

*Yes.*

You have to understand there is a measure of power that is permissible by God for demons to use. If you ask why does God permit this, the answer first of all is that when Adam gave the keys of the kingdom to Satan, he put man in a position where he is subject to the power of Satan. Part of the consequences of sin is not only spiritual death and separation from God, but also being under the power of Satan and demons. That is where man is.

I think we also have to understand from a Christian perspective some of these things happen to our friends, in our families, it is a test of our faith. Will I allow the influence of experience to tell me what is true, or will I believe what the Bible says? This culture of Cameroon has accepted the fact that some people can control the spirits, is that not true? A child is sick; therefore, go to the fetish priest and pay him, and he influences the spirits to make my child well. So a whole culture is developed around looking to people who have the power over spirits. Now, ask the question: Do people have power over spirits? No! Who has the power? Who is the god of this world? Satan. In the unsaved world, people do not have power over demons, it is the other way around.

How do I know this? Ephesians tells me:

**Ephesians 2:1-2:** *And you He made alive, who were dead in trespasses and sins, in which you once walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit who now works in the sons of disobedience,*

People are under the influence of the prince of the power of the air. Here we have discovered a lie, a deception of Satan. He has allowed his demons to pretend to be under the power of people, so people will believe this. If I am a demon and I have limited power to heal a child, I will do it at the bidding of a fetish priest. Do demons have limited power over physical bodies? Yes, we see that in Job.

But demons want to destroy. So if a fetish priest comes and pretends to have power over demons, a demon will think “HmMMM, the chief of this village has a child who is sick. He has gone to the fetish priest. If I heal

this child, this whole village will say, “Ahhh, the fetish priest is the man with the power,” and they will ignore the true God.”

The demon will boast: “So look what I accomplished by doing this one little thing that will help this man. Then this demon heals the child and all the village says, “Wow, what influence this man has!” Then the missionary comes along and says people do not have power over demons. The people will laugh and say we know he does, he had the demon heal the child, he lies, he doesn’t know the truth.

B. They play an active part in error.

Demons carry on Satan’s work of deceptions, lying, witchcraft, and heresies.

**1 Tim. 4:1-2:** *Now the Spirit expressly says that in latter times some will depart from the faith, giving heed to deceiving spirits and doctrines of demons, speaking lies in hypocrisy, having their own conscience seared with a hot iron,*

**2 Chron. 33:6:** *Also he caused his sons to pass through the fire in the Valley of the Son of Hinnom; he practiced soothsaying, used witchcraft and sorcery, and consulted mediums and spiritists. He did much evil in the sight of the LORD, to provoke Him to anger.*

(See also I John 4:1-6; I Kings 22:21-24; I Samuel 18:8-10)

Satan and the demons have been practicing this deception for 6000 years. So from the unsaved world’s perspective you can see why, with Satan’s tactics, he holds people in bondage. Will he allow people to think they have power over spirits? Of course he will, if it keeps people from trusting God. Sure we will live that lie, that’s no problem.

Remember we are talking about the permissive, limited will of God to allow demons to do certain things to accomplish God’s purposes. Does God allow things to happen that will confirm people in their unbelief? Yes. Remember Pharaoh. He hardened his heart when he heard the message of Moses. Another miracle came and he hardened his heart. Eventually after many miracles it says God hardened his heart. So God is justified to give people what they want and allow them to continue in their darkness. Sad to say that is where so much of African culture is. If I were in America teaching this class, I would be talking about an entirely different tactic.

I would be talking about how Satan has allowed unsaved people in America to become very successful. He has given them much money and nice houses so that when the pastor/missionary comes along and says, “We don’t have joy until we have Christ.” The average American looks around while he is watching TV and drinking his drinks and he thinks he has joy. Then he looks at the preacher who is telling him about joy, he’s got an old car that doesn’t work very well, and he can’t afford to send his children to the best schools, and he says to himself, “Who’s going to listen to that guy?”

Satan’s deceit, his lie, is that he has got this man believing his possessions are his joy. In Canada it is even difficult for the preacher to say “In this life you have joy, but in the next life you will understand there is no joy.” The Canadian would say, “Next life? There is not next life? There is no God, God is dead!” They are sold on lies and deception, which only confirm in them what they want to be true. Satan says, “You want possessions, sure I will give you possessions, I will let you accumulate possessions.” But then the end of life comes and they realize “Vanity, vanity, all is vanity” (Ecc. 1:2).

I’m trying to help you understand that Satan and his demons have authority in this world among the unsaved. They are believing the wrong things. They are deceived. The Lord God has in His purposes allowed this because that’s exactly what man wants. What does Romans say? It says “Man believes the lie.”

### **DEMONS AND CHRISTIANS**

(From Overcoming the World Missions Crisis by Russell L. Penney)

What about the Christian that is in this world? We need to understand that there is a unique liberation among God’s people from the bondage of Satan. But Satan and his demons have even given much false teaching to Christians in terms of our relationship and our response to demons and Satan.

So, to eliminate any misunderstanding we need to talk about demons and Christians. I’ve taken this information from a missionary, Russell Penny, who wrote the book *Overcoming the World Mission Crisis*. He says

part of that crisis is that around the world there are Christian denominations who are replacing the fetish priest. The only different is the fetish priest is not spreading falsehood in the name of Jesus Christ, but the denomination's leaders are.

I've met pastors in Ghana who claimed they could heal and cast out demons. They charge a fee to the people when they are asked to help. I have watched the spirit meetings in Ghana, especially during a funeral. The way they, to dispel evil spirits is seen in the worship services of some churches. It is crazy activity just like the spiritist funeral services.

## **I. Dispensationalism and Demon Expulsion**

### **A. The NT and casting out**

The New Testament always presents the casting out of demons as both a healing and a miracle. We need to understand what the Bible teaches about the relationship between Satan and demons and Christians. The first thing we want to talk about is our position on dispensationalism and demon expulsion. If the unsaved fetish priest pretends he can expel demons from a person, the demons will let him do this to make him popular, to make him look like he can. But now we want to talk about the true believer and the first things we see when we think about expulsion during the life of Christ. He did it all the time. But when we look at the texts themselves, we realize there is a uniqueness in this.

First of all, the NT always present the casting out of demons and both healing and miracle. We see that possession brought sometimes sickness, sometimes, disease, and sometimes physical ailments.

**Matt. 4:24:** *Then His fame went throughout all Syria; and they brought to Him all sick people who were afflicted with various diseases and torments, and those who were demon-possessed, epileptics, and paralytics; and He healed them.* (See also Luke 6: 18, 7:21, 8:2; Acts 5:16).

Here you see that sick people were afflicted with diseases and demon possessed epileptics. There is a grouping together of sick and demon possessed people who are δαιμονίζομαι (daimonizomai), meaning to be under the power of a demon. They are coming to Jesus, who heals all of them. The Greek word for "healed" is θεραπεύω (therapeuo), meaning to heal, cure, restore to health, is used here. The same word used in Luke and Acts 5:16 referring to Peter's work.

**Acts 5:16:** *Also a multitude gathered from the surrounding cities to Jerusalem, bringing sick people and those who were tormented by unclean spirits, and they were all healed.*

The apostle Peter is passing through (vs 14). Again the people are grouped together, the ones that are sick and the ones tormented with spirits; they were healed. What Jesus did, Peter one of the apostles did as well.

**Matt. 15:28:** *Then Jesus answered and said to her, "O woman, great is your faith! Let it be to you as you desire." And her daughter was healed from that very hour. (See also Matt. 12:22; Mark 1:32, 34, 3:10-11, 6:13; Lu. 9:42; Acts 10:38)*

The woman's daughter, was healed by Jesus. Here the Greek word *ἀομαί* (iaomai) meaning to cure, to heal, to make whole, is used.

**Luke 6:18-19 :** *as well as those who were tormented with unclean spirits. And they were healed. And the whole multitude sought to touch Him, for power went out from Him and healed them all.*

In Jesus ministry great power, *δύναμις* *dunamis* - inherent power, power residing in a thing by virtue of its nature, was evident and acknowledged by the people. This proved His claim as Messiah-God.

**Acts 10:38:** *How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him.*

In this passage we see Christ had power to heal those who were troubled by the devil. In the context of the ministry of Christ and the apostles, we see that the idea of casting out demons was called "healing" of the sick, "healing" of those possessed. In our thinking, we want to talk about casting out demons (expulsion), but the Scriptures does not use the term. The Scriptures talk about healing, about curing. The expressions used involved not only delivering people from diseases but delivering people from demons. It was always the ministry of healing.

B. Jesus offering the kingdom to Israel.

Jesus presented the casting out of demons as the ministry of offering the kingdom to Israel.



**Matt. 10:7, 8:** *"And as you go, preach, saying, "The kingdom of heaven is at hand." "Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out demons. Freely you have received, freely give.*

Here Jesus equates casting out demons as part of the healing ministry. Jesus is sending out the twelve with the message that the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

**Matt. 12:28:** *But if I cast out demons by the Spirit of God, surely the kingdom of God has come upon you.*

As the promised Messiah (The Christ), claimed by Jesus (Jn. 8:58; Matt.16:15-17, 26:63-64), proven by scriptures (Mic. 5:2; Is. 7:14, Ps. 118:22-23), proved by miracles (Is. 35:5-6), He had the privilege and right to offer His kingdom to that generation of Israel . Nevertheless, they would not believe:

**Jn. 1:10-11:** *He was in the world, and the world was made through Him, and the world did not know Him. He came to His own, and His own did not receive Him.*

### C. Demon expulsion and signs and wonders

Demon expulsion is referred to as a sign, wonder, miracle, being the confirmation of authority

Part of the ministry of the apostles as they went out preaching "the kingdom is at hand," is the idea of healing the sick and the dead and casting out demons (Matt. 10:8 above). So the apostles are sent out by Jesus with His authority, the message being authenticated by signs.

I have already mentioned the power δύναμις (dunamis) - inherent power, power residing in a thing by virtue of its nature (Lu. 6 above), evident in Christ by virtue of His miracles and wonders. Such power was bestowed upon the apostles as they preached, confirming the messages of Jesus.

**Acts 19:11-12:** *Now God worked unusual miracles by the hands of Paul, so that even handkerchiefs or aprons were brought from his body to the sick, and the diseases left them and the evil spirits went out of them. In this passage the Greek word for power, δύναμις (dunamis) is translated miracle in the King James Version Bible (KJV). Here Paul, a later appointed apostle of Christ, received the same confirmation as he preached the gospel.*

**Acts 5:12:** *And through the hands of the apostles many signs and wonders were done among the people. And they were all with one accord in Solo-*

*mon's Porch.* In this passage signs, σημεῖον (semeion) -an unusual occurrence, transcending the common course of nature, and wonders, τέρας (teras) –a miracle performed by any one, also defined the ministry of the apostles.

The Lord reminded the Israelites that they were constantly looking for a sign. In the OT when the prophets preached, God confirmed their message with a sign. Thirty-three times the OT mentions a “sign” for the Israelites. Therefore, we see Jesus sending the disciples out preaching and to do the miracle of healing which included casting out demons. This was to verify the truth: The kingdom (the Christ) is at hand, was.

**Mark 16:17-21:** *And these signs will follow those who believe: In My name they will cast out demons; they will speak with new tongues; "they will take up serpents; and if they drink anything deadly, it will by no means hurt them; they will lay hands on the sick, and they will recover."*

This confirmation, stated after Christ's resurrection, is given as an aspect of “the great commission” to the apostles (Mk. 16:15-21). As they preached His gospel, they are to baptize those who believe. Signs, would follow. So we see the activity of the message of the gospel is given support by the miracles and the wonders and the signs. These same confirmation signs were evident when Philip shared the gospel in Samaria among the people of Jewish/Gentile heritage:

There are those who say the signs and wonders continue for today. This is where our charismatic brothers are, but verse 20 shows that this cannot be true.

**Mark 16:20:** *Then the disciples went out and preached everywhere, and the Lord worked with them and confirmed his word by the signs that accompanied it.*

This verse gives us the timing of the wonders and miracles and the signs.

Prof. Question: *Who went out preaching in vs. 20?*

Student Response: *The apostles are going out.*

Prof. Response: *Yes, “disciples” are mentioned here, But in Matthew 28 it specifically mentions “the eleven disciples,” who we know as the apos-*

*bles, preached just as He commanded them to. With them the Lord was working and confirming the Word through the accompanying signs. Let me explain:*

The grammar of this particular passage indicates that with only those preaching in the text, the confirmation signs occur. The apostles preached, people were saved, and these confirming signs followed them throughout their ministry. That is not what this text says.

In Mark 16:20, the present participles: “working with”; “confirming”; “accompanying,” in conjunction with the aorist verb: “preached” means contemporaneous time. The working, the confirming, the accompanying, all have to take place during the time period that the apostles preached. So the miracles, wonders, and signs mentioned have to take place when these apostles preached. Verse 20 proves that the people claiming all of these miracles, wonders, sign continue whenever someone in the world believes, are incorrect, as Wiersbe clearly states: “The Apostles and Prophets laid the foundation for the church (Eph. 2:20), so their work is finished and the apostolic signs have ceased.”<sup>20</sup>

*Student Question: In vs. 18. “They heal” is for the people who believe because the verse says “they.” Is it for the disciples or for the people who will believe?*

*Prof. Response: When these disciples preach and people believe, there will be signs. That’s what that passage says. So what this is teaching, and you have to include vs 20? When these disciples preach are people going to believe? Yes. Many accepted Christ under the ministry of the apostles, that’s how the church began.*

*During the time the apostles lived, those signs mentioned there continued. From the very first sermon they preached and people believed. These signs followed. So, the same thing happened the next time the apostles preached. If we follow it in Acts, in Jerusalem, in Judea, and in Samaria*

---

<sup>20</sup> Wiersbe, W. W. (1996). *The Bible exposition commentary* (Mk 16:19–20). Wheaton, IL: Victor Books.

(Acts 8), everywhere these apostles preached, those signs continued to follow among the gentiles, the Samaritans, as long as the apostles lived.  
Student Response: -Many people use this verse to say the serpent will not kill me, healing me.

Prof. Response: I was in school with a charismatic teacher who believed these signs continue today. So I said, "If I show you in the Bible where it says these signs and wonders stop. Would you believe me?" I took him to Mark 16 and showed him in the Greek the way vs 20 is worded means these wonders and signs had to be contemporary with the apostles' life as they preached. I said "Go to any Greek grammar and it will explain that the form of the participle with the form of the verb means contemporaneous action."

You know what his answer was? He went like this, hmm. Then he said the last part of Mark 16 isn't really Scripture. Some of the new translations even omit it.

Scripture clearly indicates the confirming value of these signs and wonders to verify the truth of the gospel message for the Israelites:

**Acts 2:16-17:** *But this is what was spoken by the prophet Joel:*

*"And it shall come to pass in the last days, says God, That I will pour out of My Spirit on all flesh; Your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, Your young men shall see visions, Your old men shall dream dreams.*

**Acts 2:43:** *Then fear came upon every soul and many signs and wonders are done through the apostles.*

**Acts 5:12:** *And through the hands of the apostles many signs and wonders were done among the people.*

**Acts 14:3:** *Paul and Barnabas speak boldly in the Lord, who bears witness to His word of grace, granting signs and wonders to be done through their hands.*

**Rom. 15:19:** *...in mighty signs and wonders, by the power of the Spirit of God, so that from Jerusalem and round about to Illyricum I have fully preached the gospel of Christ.*

What we need to understand is a Biblical theology of signs and wonders. I'm going to begin to give you that. Write down these verses somewhere on your sheet.

D. A Biblical Theology of signs and wonders

**Acts 2:4:** *And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.*

At Pentecost the Holy Spirit came upon all of Jesus disciples as He promised. The sign of the Spirit is coming upon them was their speaking in many languages so that “Jews from every nation” (verses 5, 9-11) understood them and were amazed and perplexed (vs. 12).

Peter rises and explains what is taking place which is the fulfillment of Joel's prophecy of the Spirit is outpouring (vs. 18). He is preaching to Israel which always looks for signs, as stated earlier. In Peter's preaching he reminded them of the signs accompanying Jesus ministry, which they all knew:

**Acts 2:22:** *Men of Israel, hear these words: Jesus of Nazareth, a Man attested by God to you by miracles, wonders, and signs which God did through Him in your midst, as you yourselves also know — Peter is the first to preach the gospel message and three thousand Israelites are saved by faith in Jesus. The church is born and they continue daily in the apostles doctrine and fellowship, in the breaking of bread, and in prayers. (vs. 42).*

As the apostles continue to preach in Jerusalem, “And the Lord added to the church daily those who were being saved,” Peter and John encounter a man lame from birth, and he is healed. This is the first incident of healing by the apostles. Therefore the first expression of the confirming signs, miracles, and wonders of the apostles message. The continuation of these miracles is confirmed by the great response of the people:

**Acts 5:15:** *so that they brought the sick out into the streets and laid them on beds and couches, that at least the shadow of Peter passing by might fall on some of them.*

In the following texts Scripture indicates that miracles, wonders, and signs also confirmed Stephen and Philip, men uniquely appointed by the apostles. The Bible is silent about the ministry of the other appointed men.

**Acts 6:5-6:** *And they chose Stephen, a man full of faith and the Holy Spirit, and Philip, Prochorus, Nicanor, Timon, Parmenas, and Nicolas, a*

*proselyte from Antioch, whom they set before the apostles; and when they had prayed, they laid hands on them.*

**Acts 6:8:** *And Stephen, full of faith and power, did great wonders and signs among the people.*

**Acts 8:6-7:** *And the multitudes with one accord heeded the things spoken by Philip, hearing and seeing the miracles which he did. For unclean spirits, crying with a loud voice, came out of many who were possessed; and many who were paralyzed and lame were healed.*

It is apparent from Scripture that the signs, wonders, and miracles (mighty deeds) which Jesus said would follow the apostles were designed to affirm the legitimacy of apostles and confirm the message they shared. **2 Cor. 12:12:** *Truly the signs of an apostle were accomplished among you with all perseverance, in signs and wonders and mighty deeds.*

In summary, we see that when Paul writes to the Corinthians and they heard the message, it was affirmed by wonders and signs, and mighty deeds or miracles. In this passage we know this important truth: miracles, wonders, signs proved the message. The miracles/wonders/signs did not prove Jesus is God, if that were true, the apostle could claim they are God. Did the apostles do the same things as Jesus? Yes. Go back to the OT, did Elijah do the same things. It proved the message was true.

That's why, when we see that the miracles/signs/wonders were for Jesus and the apostles; it was to show the message they gave is truth from God. It makes sense the apostles had the same "proof" as Jesus. The word "apostle" is a different word from "disciple." An apostle is one who is sent out with the exact same authority as the sender. In Scriptures we see that Christ is the only one who can give his authority to another.

Christ had many disciples, but he had only 12 apostles including Paul who were personally taught by Jesus and sent forth by Jesus. Did Paul have the same privilege? Did he see the living Jesus? Galatians tells us he was taught for three years by Jesus. So everything about the apostles was true also of Paul.

They gave us the message. When they gave us the gospel message they had the window of miracles/wonders/signs to confirm the message during

their lifetime. During that time they also appointed men themselves, two of which (Stephen and Philip) also had these signs, wonders, and miracles confirm their message, (and perhaps all the other men mentioned in Acts 6:5-6).

*Prof. Question: When that generation died, did the world need to have the message confirmed with miracles/wonders/signs?*

*Student Response: No.*

*Prof. Response: Why not?*

*Student Response: We have it written down now.*

*Prof. Response: Yes! The important thing to learn about signs, miracles, and wonders in the OT and NT is this: signs confirmed the message.*

In every class I ask the students to repeat “the miracles confirm the message.” Do not let the charismatics tell you that miracles is for the purpose of getting people saved. That is not the purpose. Don’t let your culture say to you that the fetish priest has the power to heal, do miracles, and therefore, the priest is a man of God. Miracles/wonders/signs do not prove deity, do not convince people to be saved, do not prove the man is a man of God. What do miracles do? Say it with me: “Confirm the message.”

When we come to our conclusion we see the apostles had the privilege to cast out demons, the same as Christ. These incidents were always included within the context of signs, proving the message.

*Prof. Question: How long did these miracles, wonders, and signs continue?*

*Student Response: During the lifetime of the apostles.*

*Prof. Question: Now if the apostles had power to cast out demons. We also see they had power to do other things as miracles, wonders, and signs. Paul’s encounter with the poison snake for example. But the apostles are gone. We have their message now in writing, preserved forever by God. Do we do miracles/wonders/signs?*

*Student Response: No.*

Prof. Response: *What was included in miracles/wonder/signs?*

Student Response: *Casting out demons.*

Prof. Response: *Excellent, you got the message!*

Today Christians do not go around casting out demons. The purpose for this was to confirm the message, and we already have the message. So why would a true pastor try to pretend to do the same as fetish priests. If I were a demon and some pastor tried to say I can cast out a demon. I would let him pretend he is casting me out of a person, this false teaching will be accepted even in a church. Then I can stand back and say that I have deceived these Christians.

Student Question: *Can we as Christians pray for sick people?*

Prof. Response: *Yes, we will talk about this later. Now we talk about what Christians do not do. Nevertheless, does God heal people? Yes, so we can pray for His healing.*

*If one of your family member is possessed, can we pray for them? Of course, but we will talk about whether a Christian can be possessed or not later in our class.*

## LECTURE 13

We concluded yesterday by talking about the theology of signs, wonders and miracles which were primarily for “confirming the message.” In the context of what we were talking about yesterday, there are those today who say that because God has given spiritual gifts, when you look at the list of spiritual gifts you’ll see that some deal with miracles and some with healings. Therefore, they say because God gives spiritual gifts like the miracles and healings, it is possible for us to do the same today. Hebrews helps us understand that some special gifts, are not for today.

**Heb. 2:3, 4:** *how shall we escape if we neglect so great a salvation, which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed to us by those who heard Him, God also bearing witness both with signs and won-*



*ders, with various miracles, and gifts of the Holy Spirit, according to His own will?*

We see in this text that the Lord gave the message of the gospel; the truth, to those who heard him, and that's the apostles. The Bible says that those who heard Him passed this message on to the church. Here it plainly states with "those who heard Christ" there was confirmation, verification, proof from the Lord by signs, miracles, wonders **and gifts**. So in Hebrews we have one more thing added to what was already said about confirmation. There were particular gifts also given to those same people who heard Jesus.

In Acts we read Jesus's message was confirmed by miracles, wonders, and signs. In Corinthians the apostle's message was confirmed by miracles, wonders, and signs. But when we get to Hebrews we see that there is one more thing added; spiritual gifts. This tells us that certain spiritual gifts were given to the apostles for the same purpose as the miracles, wonders, and signs. That purpose was, say it together: "Miracles confirm the message." We concluded that once the message was preserved in written form, confirmation signs ceased.

This is supported in Corinthians where some of the gifts listed were discontinued.

**1 Cor. 13:8:** *Love never fails. But whether there are prophecies, they will fail; whether there are tongues, they will cease; whether there is knowledge, it will vanish away.*

It is evident that those were the gifts that brought revelation and confirmation of the revelation. We don't have time for me to go into all the details, but I teach this in the Pneumatology class; the doctrine of the Holy Spirit.

To continue our demonology study, we were talking about demons and Christians and understanding the relationship, under the topic of casting out demons we see that this was always done by Christ and the apostles in the context of miracles/wonders/signs. It was part of what we call the signs to say this proved the message. This is confirmed when we study the gifts of the Holy Spirit; prophecy has ceased, knowledge has ceased. These are

revelation gifts. And tongues and other signs that verify the authenticity of the revelation have ceased as Scripture revelation was preserved in writing.

Student Question: *Can you give us the references.*

Prof. Response: *Go to 1 Cor. 13:8 to the end of the chapter. When you study that passage it is important to look up the Greek words and study what they mean. In the passage it speaks of prophecy failing and knowledge vanishing away. I'm just telling you there is significance in the actual Greek words used.*

Now we want to look at the idea of what some have called demonization. There are many passages of Scripture in the gospels that indicate that people are what some call “demonized.”

## **II. "Demon Possessed" or "Demonized"**

### A. Confusion over word meaning

1. No Greek lexicon translates the term as "demonized" or "demonization."

In America there is an explosion of new translations of the Bible. Some of these are very poor. For example, in order not to offend the women, some translations have removed the male pronouns for God. Another thing that some have done is taken the word that is mentioned in these passages regarding people possessed by demons: δαιμονίζομαι (daimonizomai), and translated it “demonize.” I’m addressing this problem because I don’t know what all the French translations of this word used. I will say that no Greek lexicon translates this as “demonize.”

2. The translation "demonize" is actually a transliteration, not a translation.

Any Greek language student could determine that “demonize” is not a translation, but simply a transliteration of δαιμονίζομαι, pronounced “daimonizomai.” Unfortunately the original Greek word literally means “to be possessed by a demons.”

3. The transliteration "demonize" neutralizes the Biblical concept of demon possession.

This transliteration removes the stigma and repulsiveness inherent in it demon possession. What these translations actually reduce the evil nature of demons to is an annoying inconvenience. In people's minds, instead of hearing of demons possess people, they hear demons bother people. Preachers preach about demons and write about demons, often presenting them with degrees of demonization. Sometimes they take the passage in Matthew 12 where Jesus is speaking of the person who has the demon cast out and later seven demons come upon him, and reduce this to not seven individual demons but a deeper degree of demonization.

When Christ is talking about casting out demons, the word that is used ἐκβάλλω (ekballo), clearly indicates there is a possession of the individual and the demon is removed from the individual (Matt. 7:22, 8:12, 8:16). The same word is used when Christ talks about the man who criticizes another person. He says, "Instead of trying to take the small sliver out of your eye, take the beam out." It is the same word. So when we talk about this word that some people want to translate "demonize," it is the Bible word for demon-possession.

The demons are cast out of an individual by Christ. In Matthew and Mark and other passages, the demons are entering and going out of people. A great truth is evident in the story of the man in Genessaret who had demons in him. This is in Mark 5 when Christ cast the demons out, and they pleaded not to be put into the abyss. Jesus sent them into the swine.

The most common expression in the NT is the word ἔχω (echo). It is mentioned 613 times in the NT, and it simply means "to have."

**Mar. 3:30:** *because they said, "He has an unclean spirit."*

This word is used here to clarify demon possession, meaning to have a spirit, to have a demon, to have a devil. In Mark 7 the young daughter had an unclean spirit. So we clearly see the word that is "demonize" speaks of individuals possessed by demons. The verbs used clarify this because demons are not just pushed away; they are taken out of, or enter into. People

in the NT were not just bothered by demons, but they were possessed by demons.

I know when we cover this part, you are all agreeing because you have no trouble with demon possession. I don't think I have ever met an African who does not understand demon possession without even looking at the Bible. But you have to understand in America with Satan's different tactics, different schemes, it is not altogether common.

I will tell you an amazing story about the third year I was a pastor. I was teaching a SS class, and I was talking about the significance of the blood of Christ. A lady in the class began to speak with a man's voice. She was like in a trance but speaking words in a man's voice; she was interrupting the class and saying things that were crazy. Coming from America, I never even thought of demon possession. I thought she was having an epileptic seizure. I handed a man my Sunday School notes and took her to another room.

As I talked to her she seemed to calm down and come back to normal. So I thought, "Oh good, she's overcome her seizure." We went back to our worship service. That very week one of our ABWE missionaries from Brazil was in chapel and talking about demon possession. I talked to him and explained what happened and he assured me it was demon possession. This amazes me as I have never met another pastor in Canada who's had this happen in their church. There probably has been, but I have never met anyone.

It occurred to me that God allowed this in my Canadian pastoral ministry to equip me for teaching in Africa where demon possession is common. You should know the husband of this woman was an unsaved man. This same thing happened in his home so he took her to a mental institution because he thought she was going crazy. In America you don't think about demon possession.

Ladies in our church visited her in the hospital and gave her a Bible suggesting she read the gospel of John. She read the gospel, realized she needed Jesus as her Saviour, accepted Jesus and immediately was deliv-

ered. The hospital examined her, said she was completely healthy, and sent her home.

## B. Demon Habitation: Spatial or Spiritual?

Many Christian leaders suggest that there are levels or degrees of "demonization." Demon deliverance advocates claim that suicidal thoughts are a common indicator of demon invasion. Many also teach that evil spirits can hide in their victims, some also teach that degrees of deliverance are also possible. Scriptures address these fallacies, here are the Bible facts in summary:

1. The only Biblical evidence of degrees of demon possession is mentioned by Jesus as seven demons a worse state than one (Matt. 12:44-45).

2. The Greek word *ekballein*, used thirty-three times in the New Testament, always means to "cast out," and refers to a special removal.

**Mt. 7:5:** *Thou hypocrite, first cast out the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast out the mote out of thy brother's eye.*

**Mt. 7:22:** *Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works?*

3. The New testament speaks of demons "going out" and "entering into" people.

**Mr. 9:26:** *And the spirit cried, and rent him sore, and came out of him: and he was as one dead; insomuch that many said, He is dead.*

**Mr. 5:13:** *And forthwith Jesus gave them leave. And the unclean spirits went out, and entered into the swine*

4. The most often used expression is a construction of *echein* (to have) followed by one of the terms for demon. This phrase expresses a special relationship meaning "to bear in oneself." The Biblical phrase "to have a demon" means to be demon possessed.

**Mr. 3:30:** *Because they said, He hath an unclean spirit.*

**Mr. 7:25:** *For a certain woman, whose young daughter had an unclean spirit, heard of him, and came and fell at his feet.*

We look now at the Scriptures to determine what the Bible tells us about a Christian's delivery from Satan and demons.

## III. Can Christians be Demon Possessed?

### A. The crippled woman bound by Satan.

**Luke 13:11-13:** *And, behold, there was a woman which had a spirit of infirmity eighteen years, and was bowed together, and could in no wise lift up herself. And when Jesus saw her, he called her to him, and said unto her,*

*Woman, thou art loosed from thine infirmity. And he laid his hands on her: and immediately she was made straight, and glorified God.*

Student Question: *Can you explain those words in Greek?*

Prof. Response: *These are verbs that indicate that the demon must be in the person, and they are cast out of the person. Is that clear now?*

Student Response: *Yes. I understand now.*

The first text is Luke 13:10-17. Please look this text up in your Bibles. In this passage we have to determine whether this woman was possessed or not. Five points are significant in the text:

1. The normal terms for demon possession are not in the text.

When we read the text we see that none of the terms regarding demons such as “demonization” or “cast out,” or “have” from other texts are used in this text.

2. Jesus spoke to the woman directly and laid His hands on her.

In this situation Jesus put His hand on her and healed her. But in all the other passages where there was demon possession, He never laid a hand on the person, He just spoke and commanded the demons to leave.

3. The phrase "*a spirit of infirmity*" does not mean demon possession.

The NT uses this phrase to talk about a human condition, for example 2 Tim. 1:7 “*spirit of fear, but of power and of love and a sound mind.*” We use this verse to talk about the Spirit of God as the one completing this in our lives. That’s true, but that’s not what the text means. The idea of the spirit of fear and the spirit of infirmity is the condition you are in. In 2 Cor. 4:13 where Paul says, “*we have the same spirit of faith*” is not speaking about the Spirit of God in us, it is talking about the condition of the heart, the spirit of faith is in me, I have the principles of faith operating in my life. Therefore, the phrase *spirit of infirmity* does not indicate this woman was demon possession.

4. The phrase "*Satan has bound*" is not a reference to Satan possession.

Verse 16 states, “*Satan has bound*” the women. This is not a phrase talking about spirit possession either. The Biblical evidence points to the truth that Satan is behind some diseases as a means of oppressing people. However,

this is not possession. Job's boils were sent by Satan with God's permission (See Job). Nevertheless, we don't say Job was possessed. So it is the same with this woman. Satan has given her the grief of a disease.

**Acts 10: 38:** *Jesus of Nazareth... went about doing good, and healing all who were oppressed by the devil; for God was with Him.*

**2 Cor. 12:7:** *[Paul is saying} ...to keep me from exalting myself, there was given me a thorn in the flesh, a messenger of Satan to buffet me to keep me from exalting myself! None of these text indicated demon possession.*

It is interesting in Acts 10:38 Jesus was healing all who were *oppressed*, καταδυναστεύω (katadunasteuo); to exercise harsh control over one, to use one's power against one, by the devil. So in that passage the word used for possession is not there, it is oppressed. In that context there are those who have sickness, diseases, they are not possessed, they are afflicted and *buffeted*, κολαφίζω (kolaphizo); to maltreat, treat with violence and contumely, by Satan with these diseases. When we think about the wicked, evil nature of demons, you can see how they would be inclined to make people suffer because that is their wickedness. You can see that because God has given them limited power in this area of bringing physical torment; they are going to use it as far as God will allow them to. It just expresses the evil nature of demons.

5. The phrase "*a daughter of Abraham*" means to be of Jewish decent.

The last point to be made is regarding the phrase "*daughter of Abraham*." This term is not indicating the woman was a believer. It just means she was Jewish. The phrase "*a daughter of Abraham*" used in pre-Pentecost gospel references (Matt. 1:1, Lu. 3:34, 19:9) means to be of Jewish decent, emphasising the ministry of Jesus to the Jews first and foremost. This is evident in Jesus own words: "*I am not sent but unto the lost sheep of the house of Israel*" (Matt. 15:24). We know that Jesus, when He was ministering, concentrated His ministry toward the Jews. So all that we have proven is that in this particular passage, the widow was not possessed, she was oppressed. I added this text to help us see the importance of the terms that are used when it speaks of possession.

Now we come to Matt. 12 and in this passage we will see the answer to the question, "Can Christians be possessed?"

B. The contributions of Matthew 12.

**Matt. 12:26-30:** *And if Satan cast out Satan, he is divided against himself; how shall then his kingdom stand? And if I by Beelzebub cast out devils, by whom do your children cast them out? therefore they shall be your judges. But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God is come unto you. Or else how can one enter into a strong man's house, and spoil his goods, except he first bind the strong man? and then he will spoil his house. He that is not with me is against me; and he that gathers not with me scatters abroad.*

Christ is explaining the truth about the house that is divided. If you remember, they were accusing Jesus of doing his miracles in the power of Satan. They were rejecting the work of the spirit of God in his life, saying he was working with the power of Beelzebub. This was a great blasphemy to God, to Jesus Christ. Jesus went on to explain that this was unforgivable. So many people talk about this passage as the unpardonable sin. There has been much abuse about that in preaching.

You need to understand that the unpardonable sin was the sin of the Jewish people in the days of Jesus, who saw all His miracles, said He did it in the power of Satan. So to commit the unpardonable sin, Jesus has to be physically in our presence, He has to be performing miracles to show His message is right, and unbelief has to be presented in the way of saying “you are doing this in the power of Satan.” Those circumstances do not exist today, and therefore, the unpardonable sin is not for today.

Nevertheless, I want you to understand the context of Matthew 12. Jesus argues that He cannot operate in the power of Satan because He belongs to another realm. Jesus says much in this passage that we need to examine. The five following statements are summaries of what Jesus has said in the Matthew text.

1. Jesus taught that two opposing kingdoms exist, the Kingdom of God and the Kingdom of Satan.

Jesus teaches there are two opposing kingdoms. He speaks of the kingdom of Satan, and He speaks of the kingdom of God. There are these two kingdoms, and we have already talked about this.

2. When Jesus casts out demons by God's power that action shows that Satan's kingdom is being destroyed.



Jesus has the power to destroy the kingdom of Satan and we know this from what we are told about Calvary spoiling the kingdom. So every time Jesus addressed demons, every time He cast out demons, every time He healed someone who had a disease because of demons, He was demonstrating His power over Satan's world.

Did Jesus ever fail in healing anybody? No. Did He ever fail in casting demons out? No. So when we talk about two opposing kingdoms, we are not talking about two equal opposing kingdoms. Satan's kingdom is the kingdom that Adam originally had, but Satan usurped it from Adam. That kingdom, first by Adam, then by Satan, is always under the control of Christ. The church now, and believers in the OT, are part of the New coming Kingdom that will be on the earth.

3. Jesus describes His labour of casting out demons as the change of ownership.

In this passage, when Jesus speaks about His ministry of casting out demons because of their taking possession of individuals, He uses the phrase "*the binding of the strong man.*" This suggests a possession, an ownership; the rule of demons on a person. Therefore, that casting out the demons is replacing that demonic ownership. In the Matthew text Jesus had just healed a demon possessed blind and dumb man. Jesus says very clearly "*if I cast out demons by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God has come unto you.*" He is talking about the changing of ownership an individual from the kingdom of Satan to the kingdom of God. Those in God's kingdom become the property of Jesus.

4. Demon possession and the Kingdom of God are therefore mutually exclusive.

This is not saying that every person who the Lord delivered from demons are born again. We know salvation can only come by faith through the work of Jesus Christ. But the context is whose authority they are under; they are under God's authority when the demons are cast out. So He is saying demon possession and the kingdom of God's rule are mutually exclusive. There is no such thing as someone who has been delivered from Satan in the power of God still having Satan in their lives. If the power and

the authority of God has delivered an individual from the kingdom of Satan, there is no chance that Satan will still be around. The power of God is supreme.

**2 Cor. 6:15:** *And what accord has Christ with Belial? Or what part has a believer with an unbeliever?*

Paul is clear here. When we accept the Lord Jesus Christ as our Saviour, we become part of the kingdom of God. Paul is talking about who we are yoked with. Paul states: “what fellowship has righteousness with lawlessness?” “What communion has light with darkness?” (vs 14), then indicates a believer is no longer in the kingdom of Belial, but in the kingdom of Christ (vs 15).

Prof. Question: *So, if to be born again is to be part of the kingdom of God, is it possible for Satan to possess that individual?*

Student Response: *No.*

Prof. Response: *Correct, the kingdom of God and the kingdom of Satan are exclusive.*

To support this idea in this text Jesus affirms this truth by talking about the family.

5. Jesus affirms this truth immediately (Matt. 12:46-50) with the story of the true family that cannot be divided.

He says in this passage that a family divided cannot stand. Are we a part of the family of God when we accept Jesus as Saviour? Yes. We are told this in John; “*we become the children of God.*” Is it possible that a child that is in the family of God be possessed by a demon to divide the family? No. So when you read Matthew 12, you realize this statement is telling us that a born again person is impossible to be possessed by demons. Jesus teaches that the kingdom of God and the kingdom of Satan are mutually exclusive. To be born again is to be part of the kingdom of God. To be born again is to be part of the family of God.

*Student Question: Taking this class I realize that we here in Africa have much difficulty with demons. How come?*

*Prof. Response: Jesus said, "You shall know the truth and the truth shall set you free." The reality is that the people of Cameroon and West Africa have not been shown the truth. I'm talking now about Christians. In the twelve years that I have been coming to Africa, I have heard many Africans preach. The truth is that much of the preaching I hear is taking the traditions and adding them into God's truth. This creates falsehood.*

*Student Response: "Amen!"*

*Prof. Response: That's why our mission is committed to teaching God's people, not just reaching out to the lost. 50 or 60 years ago when ABWE came to Africa, it was to share the gospel and establish churches. In the 35 years of ABWE in the country of Togo, our missionaries have taught the people, and they have established over 130 churches.*

*The missionaries have seen that even though churches are started, good teaching has not happened. So 20 years ago our mission asked people to join the mission to teach pastors, so you can teach the truth to people. 12 years ago, God called me to be one of those people. I was a pastor for 25 years but then God said to me, "I want you to go teach pastors." My goal is to not only teach the Word to pastors, but prepare pastors to teach the Word themselves. Do not look at your country as less effective in Christianity as America. You are growing in the knowledge of God because schools are being established and pastors are getting deeper into the word, but I'm sad to say in America the opposite is happening. In Africa, you are growing in the knowledge of God through the school and the training the pastors have. In America the church is diminishing in its knowledge. Bible colleges are closing. The enrollment in Bible seminaries is diminishing. And America now needs missionaries to go back and start schools.*

*I consider myself to be privileged to be a part of what God is doing in Africa and it just amazes me. I have met pastors who say to me "I would love to be doing what you are doing." They are teaching and preaching to people who have their fingers in their ears. When I taught in Ghana the*

*pastors would walk 20 km. and live on one bag of rice just to be there to study the Word of God. The desire for the knowledge of God in Africa so exceeds what is in America that you will become the nation that delivers missionaries to the world. So preach the world. Your question is simple- the truth shall set you free. That's my sermon for today; let's get back to the notes.*

### C. Other Passages of Scripture to be considered.

There are passages that look like Christians can be possessed. But again a careful examination of the terms used and the words will show this is not the case.

**Eph. 4:26-27:** *Be ye angry, and sin not: let not the sun go down upon your wrath: Neither give place to the devil. "*

"Give place" (*topos*) is used 94 times in the N.T, in a metaphorical sense meaning "possibility, opportunity, chance" and does not imply opening the door for possession. The context of Ephesians 4 suggests that this would give opportunity for Satan to cause dis-unity.

The phrase "give no place to the devil" is referred to by some people who say: "Aha, it is possible for Christians to be possessed, it says so there." But the words used will show it is not possession. The key words are "give:" δίδωμι (*didomiplace*), meaning to share of one's own accord, to give one something, and the word "place:" τόπος (*topos*), meaning to give a chance, an opportunity, an occasion for acting .

Christians will see they should not give Satan opportunity to cause division in the church, the family of God. How do we give opportunity, it is not by possession, because Christians cannot be possessed. It is acting in disunity ourselves by not loving one another, by not forgiving one another, by pride and jealousy, by being a bad example; these are all opportunities for Satan to start people thinking wrong and continuing disunity.

**1 Cor. 6:19:** *What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?*

**2 Cor. 6:16:** *And what agreement has the temple of God with idols? For you are the temple of the living God. As God has said: "I will dwell in them And walk among them. I will be their God, And they shall be My people."*

Scriptures teach that a believers body is the temple of the Holy Spirit and cannot therefore be the temple of Satan or demons. Some people use these very verses to say that if the Spirit of God can be within me, then demon spirits can also be within me. That is human reasoning; trying to come to humanly logical conclusions of Scripture, which is wrong. These texts say just the opposite of that. If the Spirit of God is in my life, do you think demons can be here as well? Impossible!

Ephesus was undoubtedly a centre of occult activity in the Roman world. Therefore, Paul made unique remarks against it:

**Acts 19:35:** *And when the city clerk had quieted the crowd, he said: "Men of Ephesus, what man is there who does not know that the city of the Ephesians is temple guardian of the great goddess Diana, and of the image which fell down from Zeus?"*

When we look at the city of Ephesus, it was the center of demon worship. This is seen in Acts 19 when Paul is sharing. It says, "The city of the Ephesians is a worshipper of the great goddess Diana" so if this is the background of the church in Ephesus than this is the center of Satan worship and demon worship in Asia. Therefore, you would think that this would be the place that Christians would be possessed if it were possible.

Therefore, you would expect that when Paul is writing to the church of Ephesus, he is going to help them understand how to be delivered from demon possession. But Paul says nothing about this. Not only does he say nothing when he writes the church at Ephesus, he says nothing about this in any of his epistles. That tells us something right there, demon possession among Christians is not possible and Paul does not discuss it. There is no evidence anywhere in Paul's or Peter's writings of demons possessing Christians. The silence shouts Christians cannot be demon possessed!

In all the N.T books written to the believers in Ephesus; Ephesians, 1&2 Timothy, 1 John, and Revelation, no instructions are given regarding Christians being demon possessed. Although demon possessed non-believers are living in Philippi (Acts 16:16), Paul gives no instructions in the Epistle to the Philippians regarding demon possessed Christians. Peter declares that God has given us in Scripture everything needed for godliness and successful Christian living (2 Pet. 1:3), yet he is silent regarding

Christians being demon possessed. The silence of scripture shouts believers cannot be demon possessed.

*Prof. Question: Can the unsaved be demon possessed?*

*Student Response: Yes.*

*Prof. Question: Can God's people be demon possessed?*

*Student Response: No.*

*Prof. Question: So then can we as believers go around and say, "In the name of Jesus Christ, I cast out demons."*

*Student Response: Silence!*

*Prof. Response: I see a reluctance to answer. Let's talk about what power Christians have over demons.*

#### **IV. Do believers have authority over Satan and Demons?**

In Africa I have seen pastors say this. In Cameroon you have churches that practice this. Now we have to go back and see what do Scriptures say? Are we going to look at what appears to be experience of truth or will we go to the Word of God? Remember, demons are wicked and are deceivers. If they can pretend to be exorcised by pastors, they will do this to keep people in falsehood. People will not praise God and look to God for strength; they will look to that pastor.

That's exactly what the fetish spirit worship does as well. It takes attention away from God and His greatness and focuses on a man. There are several passages used to claim Christians have authority over demons:

##### **A. The Great Commission**

**Matt. 28:19-20:** *Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, and teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you. And surely I am with you always, to the very end of the age."*

**The False Claim:** Jesus gave all authority to believers; therefore, they have power over Satan.

**Bible Answer:** I have three points:

1. Jesus does declare He has all power. He demonstrates that in His ministry.

Matthew quotes Jesus: “*All power s given unto me.*” Not only did Jesus cast out demons, He walked on water, He stilled the storm and sea, and He raised the dead. So there is no doubt that He has power over all realms.

2. The reference to Jesus authority in this text was not a "passing on" of that authority.

When you look at this passage, it does not say he passed on His full power and authority. The passage only says, “all power is given unto Me.” It does not say “all power is given to Me and I give that to you.” The reason He declares all power was given to Him is because He is giving the commission to the apostles. He is calling, with divine authority, for their obedience. In essence Jesus said: “I have authority over all, so now I’m telling you to go and make disciples.”

Has Jesus got the authority to tell His own what to do? Absolutely. That is why it is a command; it is a commission. With all the authority He has, He has the right to give those apostles, and the church, the commission to go and make disciples. That’s the emphasis of the text.

The apostles understand that the commission was not just for them but carries on through the church. This is evident by the conclusion of the commission in Jesus saying, “I am with you all time, and through all time.” The great commission is not a promise of all authority to cast out demons. It is the realization that He has the authority to give this commission to the apostles and that authority continues over the church. This is the mandate for the church.

3. The church has no authority, and needs no authority to carry out its obligation to evangelise and disciple the world.

What the church has is the Holy Spirit; therefore, it needs no other power. Paul said: “*I can do all things through Christ who strengthens me*” (Phil. 4:13). What the church possesses is the preserved Word of God as final authority for faith and practice. Jesus said, “*But He answered and said, "It is written, “Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceeds from the mouth of God”*” (Matt. 4:4). What the church needs is obedience. Jesus said, “*If you love me, keep my commands*” (John14:15). The Great Commission is not a promise of authority over Satan and Demons, it is a call to serve.

## B. The Book of Ephesians

**Eph. 2:5-7:** *Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved) And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus: That in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.*

**The False Claim:** Believers are seated with Christ in heaven; therefore, they share His authority and have power over Satan.

**Bible Answer:** I have four points:

1. Paul emphasises in Ephesians 1:21 that it is Christ who has all authority, and that all authority is placed under His feet (1:22).

In Ephesians 2:6 the believer is told believers “*sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus.*” Scripture teaches that Christians are in Christ, therefore are with Christ. Nevertheless, some say because believers are seated with Christ, they have His power, and as He could cast out demons so they can cast out demons. Do you see how this is human reasoning? It is what we call “proof texting.” It begins with what someone wants in their life, and then they twist the Bible around to show what they want.

The context of Ephesians 2:6 is the deliverance from the death of Satan’s realm (vs. 4a) to living and abiding in Christ (vs. 4b). This passage of Scripture is not about authority, or power, or even location, but about deliverance and new life in Christ:

Christ’s post-resurrection state was new, powerful, and unique. So too Christians, in whom Christ dwells, have a new, powerful, and unique life and position. This new life, power, and position demand that believers have a new set of values, as Paul stated in his companion letter to the Colossian believers: “Since, then, you have been raised with Christ, set your heart on things above, where Christ is seated at the right hand of God. Set your minds on things above, not on earthly things” (Col. 3:1–2).<sup>21</sup>

---

<sup>21</sup> Hoehner, H. W. (1985). Ephesians. In J. F. Walvoord & R. B. Zuck (Eds.), *The Bible Knowledge Commentary: An Exposition of the Scriptures* (J. F. Walvoord & R. B. Zuck, Ed.) (Eph 2:6a). Wheaton, IL: Victor



You see that we can use the Bible out of context and twist it to say whatever we want really. Did you know the Bible says there is no God thirteen times? David himself in Psalms 53:1 says: *There is no God*. So it must be true! I guarantee the Bible states this thirteen times. But, what David really says is, *The fool has said in his heart, "There is no God."* The other verses state something like *there is no God like thee*. So, if I neglect to consider the whole text and context of a passage, I can claim the Bible says "There is no God." But it is not true.

It is this kind of twisting and perverting of the Scripture that human reasoning and misinterpretation leads to. Did God say that believers are seated with Him in the heavenly places. Yes. But does that means they have the power to cast out demons? No! Does it sound reasonable? Yes. But it is not the truth. Can I preach such falsehood and have people believe me? Of course I can. I can deceive people even as Satan deceives them. I can even believe it is true myself. But it is a lie.

2. "*All things under His feet*" is quoted from Psalm 8. Paul, in 1 Corinthians 15 indicates that this is a reference to Christ's eschatological authority in the abolishment of death.

**1 Cor. 15:25-27:** *The last enemy that will be destroyed is death. For "He has put all things under His feet." But when He says "all things are put under Him," it is evident that He who put all things under Him is excepted.*

The full extent of Christ's authority will not be exercised until His Messianic Reign, when Satan is bound for 1000 years and Christ rules on earth. The phrase itself recognizes Christ's full authority over death, but this will not be exercised until His Messianic reign. Remember when Christ is on the earth reigning for those 1000 years, it is no longer the kingdom of Satan, it is the kingdom of God. Darkness and death is not the principle but light and life is the principle. At that time, in the millennial reign His reign is spiritual and political exercised over angels, over demons, over earthly rulers.

3. This authority is both spiritual and political, exercised over angels, demons, and earthly rulers. If this authority was granted to the believers now as "seated with Christ," the true church would have authority over government. Yet scripture calls believers to submit to government (See Rom. 13:1-4; 1 Tim. 3:1-2).

We are talking about the earthly kingdom, the Messianic kingdom, ruled by Christ. We know that right now in the universal kingdom, God has authority over all these things, but the reference to "seated in Christ" speaks of the fact that He reigns on the earth with this authority over political things as a man. So, if we use this term to explain the authority we have now, we are saying "Not only have we authority over demons, we have authority over the governments as well." This is not Biblical thinking.

In summary, Ephesians 2 is not talking about authority, the context is talking about the privilege we have in Christ. We are of a different realm, we are not under the rule of Satan. As believers we are under the rule of Christ, we are seated with Him. This does not mean we have power over demons; rather it speaks of the privilege we have. We are told by Paul that even in this privilege we respect the government, we pay taxes, and we obey the rules.

4. The Ephesians 6 passage regarding the believers Spiritual warfare and the soldiers armour makes no reference to authority over Satan's realm.

In the context of Ephesians, even though we are seated with Christ in the new realm which is our privilege, in Ephesians 6 we do not exercise the "spoken word of authority," rather, we have to wrestle with the principalities and powers. So, even in Ephesians 6, when Paul is talking about where Christian warfare in relation to the kingdom of Satan, he doesn't talk about the authority to dismiss or cast out demons. He calls on us to put on the whole Armour of God, so we can fight as good soldiers in this warfare.

Ephesians 2:6 is not a promise by position of power over Satan for believers. No major passage on the believer's position in Christ applies au-

thority to the Christian's warfare with the spirit world (See Rom. 6:1-14; Col. 2:12; 3:1-11).

We have covered some very important things today. Especially in the realm of being separated from the power of Satan. Does that mean we can never be oppressed or afflicted by Satan or demons? No! We see Job, a righteous man, yet God permitted Satan to afflict him. But, we have the promise that we are not under the rule of Satan, we cannot be possessed. But we also realize that Satan can be used by God to bring circumstances in our life to grow our faith. When God permits this, it is a trial that is for building up our faith.

When I was in Ghana, I taught this course to many pastors. After we covered this material I said, "let's talk about what you've learned." One of the pastors said, "I have something to say that is a bit of a confession." He went on to explain that he came from a village controlled by a fetish priest, who was completely committed to demon worship. The pastor had been witnessed to by a missionary and accepted Christ as his Saviour. He went back to the village and started witnessing, eventually establishing a church.

Because he was a pastor and our mission started a school, he attended the school to learn more about the Bible. The fetish priests were not happy that he was starting this church in the village. So they came to him and said, "You come to the elders tree and talk to us about Jesus. When you do this our spirits will kill you."

He confessed he was afraid to go. He said when he was sharing the gospel, he would always avoid going where the priest elders were. Now, after this course, he said, "I see I have nothing to fear for *"He that is in me is greater than he that is in the world. Do not fear the one who can destroy the body, fear Him who can destroy the body and the soul in hell."* (Mt 10:28).

He then said, "When I leave the school, the first thing I do will be to go and meet the elder priests. If God permits them to kill me, that is fine. I fear them no more. I saw in in this student's eyes the liberating power of God's Word: *"You shall know the truth and the truth shall set you free"*

(Joh 8:32). This was one of the greatest blessings I have experienced since teaching with our mission.

Let me go back to the lady in my church who spoke. When I learned that this was demon possession, I was amazed. I never experienced this before. I didn't know what to do. If I explained this to the church, the people would think I am crazy. It was a small church, we had deacons and no additional elders or pastors.

The deacons were godly older men and I knew I could tell them this. Some of these men were in my class when this happened. So I went to the deacons and explained what the missionary said had happened to this lady. These men, wise and mature, said, "Let us not tell the church exactly what this is, but ask the church to pray for the lady to be healed." So I went to the SS class and the church and said, remember what happened to our sister? We are concerned about her because she has never accepted Christ. Let's pray that God will help her and that she will accept Jesus. As the church prayed regularly for her some ladies when to visit her. They gave her a Bible. She began to read it and accepted Jesus as Saviour. She was delivered from the demonic influence.

As Christians we do not attempt to talk to the demons nor to dispel them, our job is to talk to God, to pray with persistence for His deliverance. This is the same as if you had a child who was sick and could die. What did David do when his child was sick? Did he try to cast out a demon? No. He pleaded and wrestled in prayer with God to deliver the child. Did God deliver the child? Yes! He gave the child the best deliverance; He brought the child into His own presence. Isn't that the best deliverance? David understood this and claimed, "I will be with the child again." Even in our prayers, think biblically. The death of an innocence child and the death of a believer is the greatest deliverance to have.

## **LECTURE 14**

Under our study of demons we have looked at the fact that Christians cannot be possessed. Christians do not expel demons. And then we looked at texts that are difficult that people use to say Christians do have the pow-

er of Jesus to cast out demons. Some say in the great commission “all authority” is given to the Christians, but we see that is not what the text says. We looked at Ephesians where it speaks about believers being seated in the heavenlies with Christ, we see the text there does not indicate it is a matter of power, but of privilege.

### C. The Book of Romans

**Rom. 6:4:** *Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.*

**The False Claim:** Believers are raised with Christ; therefore, they share His authority and have power over Satan.

#### **Bible Answer:**

1. Every reference of our position in Christ refers to our need to conquer the flesh, not to command demonic forces.

Paul says, “We are buried with Him and raised up from the dead with Him.” Again, some say, “If we are raised with Christ, we have the authority of Christ, we can cast out demons.” However, when you look at the related texts in the Bible, every reference to our position in Christ refers to our need to conquer the flesh. That’s what the texts are all about, especially in Romans. Chapters 6-8 in Romans is about our sanctification. Here Paul tells us that salvation gives us not only the privilege of being the child of God, but also the privilege of becoming like Jesus through the process of sanctification.

So Paul talks about our death, burial, resurrection in Christ to show us we have the power of God for our walking through life in obedience. So the passages in Romans have nothing to do with casting out demons. Paul starts with our death, burial, resurrection in Christ so that we have a new nature. He talks about the ministry of the Spirit of God in our lives to confirm our salvation. All of this is in that passage.

2. Paul’s challenge in the New Life is not to focus on demonic powers but on God ...*present your bodies a living sacrifice* (Rom. 12:1).

Paul’s reference to new life is a call for us to surrender all to Christ because God has given us everything we need to walk with Him in obedi-

ence. The conclusion comes in Romans 12:1 where he says, “*therefore, present your bodies as a living sacrifice.*” Because we have justification and there is no condemnation (Rom. 1-5), and we have a new nature and the Spirit of God abiding in us (Rom. 6-8), we can be servants of righteousness.

So he says yield yourself, commit yourself, submit yourself, to being servants of righteousness. This is a decision each believer has to make; to continue to allow the Spirit of God to work in our life. We see in the NT that there are many passages of Scripture that teach the same thing. All of them speak of our exalted position in Christ. We are with Him, we are in Him and He is in us. None of these passages refer to demonic possession or power over demons. They are all about the possibility and call to live a victorious life.

3. Parallel passages that refer to the exalted position and authority of Christ never include thoughts of the believer’s authority over all rule and dominion (See Eph. 4:10, Phil. 2:9-11, 1 Cor. 15:24-28, Heb. 1:3-13, 4:14-16, 8:1, 9:24).

In conclusion, Romans 6:4 is a promise of power for a new life, a victorious life over sin, not a promise of power over Satan.

These passages we have examined are some of the passages that individuals use to claim believers can cast out demons. You can see then, if some people claim Christians can do everything that Jesus did, they would also claim Christians have the power to rebuke Satan.

#### D. Rebuking Satan and His Host

**Mark 1:23-25:** *And there was in their synagogue a man with an unclean spirit; and he cried out, Saying, Let us alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art, the Holy One of God. And Jesus rebuked him, saying, Hold thy peace, and come out of him.*

**The False Claim:** Christ rebuked demons; therefore, Christians who are also "children of God" (John 1:12) share His authority and power over Satan.

**Bible Answer:** I present five points:

1. In the OT the word rebuke רָעַל (*ga-ar*) is consistently of God's triumph over His enemies.

**Zech. 3:2:** *And the LORD said to Satan, "The LORD rebuke you, Satan! The LORD who has chosen Jerusalem rebuke you! Is this not a brand plucked from the fire?"*

**Ps. 9:5:** *You have rebuked the nations, You have destroyed the wicked; You have blotted out their name forever and ever.*

But it is not just Satan, but all of his enemies that are rebuked by Him. These texts express the sovereign power and authority that God has. It teaches us that even in the wars that are going on in the world today, God is sovereign over every realm. In rabbinical literature, only God rebukes Satan.

What is rabbinical literature? It is the historical commentaries that the Jewish nation have made regarding the OT. When the Jewish priests, rabbis and scholars were teaching the Jewish people, they always used the word "*gahha*" referred to God and only God can rebuke Satan. Now Jewish literature does not have the same authority as the Scriptures, we know this, but God did give them the literatures and called them to teach them to the Jewish people. So how the rabbinical literature interprets this is significant to help us understand what the original understanding of that passage was.

When we are doing our hermeneutics and interpreting Scripture, OT and NT, the purpose is to determine the author's original intent of his words. So if we can find people closer to the date that the prophet spoke and see how they used words, it helps us understand the original intent more clearly.

2. Jude 9 uses the Greek word *epitimaō* as the OT word *ga-ar* when quoting Zech. 3:2. Here, not even the angel Michael rebuked Satan, but left that for God alone: "*The Lord rebuke you.*"

When we come to Jude vs. 9 the Greek word used in quoting Zechariah is "*epitimáō.*" When God led Jude to quote Zechariah he used ἐπιτιμάω (*epitimaō*), meaning to admonish or charge sharply, to rebuke, to translate "*gahar.*" So Jude is teaching that even Michael, the archangel,

did not rebuke Satan. This is the word that is mentioned in the gospels when Jesus rebukes demons.

3. By use of the term *epitimaō* in the Gospels, there are parallels made between Jesus' rebuking demons and rebuking the realms of nature and Satan (Examples: Mk 1:25, rebuked demons, 3:12, warned unclean spirits).

Do you see what I am saying? The word *epitimaō* translated "rebuked" is used of Jesus in the gospels. It is used to rebuke Satan and demons, and the storm surrounding the disciples in the sea. Those who say believers supposedly have authority to rebuke Satan's realm must also say believers have authority to rebuke the natural realm (sea, storms) and the physical realm (blindness, death).

The next time a pastor or church leader says they have the power to rebuke demons, you tell them to make the storm to go away, tell them to raise the dead!

4. When Jesus rebuked Satan and demons, He was demonstrating His authority as God, and presenting a sign to confirm the truth of His message. (Lu. 5:24, John 20:30-31, Acts 2:22, Heb. 2:3-4)

Neither angels nor believers have authority to rebuke Satan. Remember in these situations, He is confirming the message that He is God. Neither angels nor people, rebuke Satan or demons, only God can do that.

5. **James 4:6-8:** *But He gives more grace. Therefore He says: "God resists the proud, But gives grace to the humble." Therefore submit to God. Resist the devil and he will flee from you. Draw near to God and He will draw near to you. Cleanse your hands, you sinners; and purify your hearts, you double-minded.*

You asked yesterday what a Christian is able to do. It starts here. We are first of all to submit to God; that means we are yielding our lives to the will of God and to being led by God through His Word and by His Spirit. When we truly submit to God we are able, according to Romans, to have the power to live a victorious life, resist Satan, and resist temptation. The Bible says when we submit to God and resist the devil in the power of God, he flees from us (Jas. 4:7). In this passage James goes on to ex-



plain what it means to submit to God; draw near to Him and He will draw near to you; cleanse your hands and purify your hearts. According to this passage, the believer is assured of victory over Satan's onslaughts.

Prof. Response: *Can Satan or demons possess believers?*

Student Response: *No, we are of the kingdom of God, we are in the family of God.*

Prof. Response: *All that Satan can do is to attack from the outside. We are told that if we submit to God in humble obedience to Him, Satan will flee. Do we see this in Jesus' life? Did Satan attack Him from the outside?*

Student Response: *Yes, he tempted Jesus to make bread from stones when He was hungry.*

Prof. Response: *It is very important to see this: What did Jesus do? Did He say, "I am the Son of God, depart from me." What did He do?*

Student Response: *He quoted from the Bible.*

Prof. Response: *Yes. Could Jesus have said "I am the Son of God, depart from me"? Yes, He had that power. He could have rebuked Satan at that moment, but He is showing us in His own temptation what we do. We depend on God, we draw on His Word and depend upon His indwelling Spirit. That is how we defeat Satan so that he flees from us, just as he did with Jesus.*

*Did Satan return to try to attack Jesus again? Yes. In Matthew it says he departed only for a time. Jesus, being a man, was in this place of vulnerability, it is one of the great things about Jesus becoming a man. Was Jesus truly tempted? Yes. The Bible says He was tempted in every way we are tempted: by the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, the pride of life. By the potential power of all these Jesus was tempted, yet He never once yielded to temptation. That was the life of Christ.*

*This is going to be the life of every believer. Did Jesus ever sin? No because He was God. So we will not have the success that Jesus has, we know this because John tells us that if we say we do not sin, we are liars. But Paul teaches us that we have the choice every time, we can have vic-*

*tory every time. James teaches us how- submit to God, keep clean, be in the Word, and you will have victory.*

The believer is assured of victory over Satan's personal onslaughts (Eph. 6:11) only by submission and therefore humble obedience to God. Believers have not received delegated authority in the Great Commission, nor by position, nor by resurrection power, to command Satan or demons to obey, to rebuke them or to pronounce judgement upon them.

The authority that believers have is to carry the Word of God to people, that is the authority of pastors, of the church. Our position in Christ is the privilege we have. The power of the resurrection that we have by the abiding spirit of God is for our own victory over sin. None of the privileges and none of the indwelling power of the spirit of God is used in Scripture to give believers power over Satan or demons.

So the question has been asked: What should Christians do? I have four points that demonstrate what we should do. All of them say, "Don't focus on Satan, focus on God."

## **V. What are Christians to do?**

A. Concentrate on evangelism and discipleship.

**Rom. 1:16:** *For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to everyone that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.*

When we focus on God, we should be obeying Him regarding the great commission which means focusing on evangelism and discipleship. The answer for helping the unsaved to be delivered from Satan is not our power but our message. You know people who are demon afflicted? The answer is salvation. That's what was the answer to the woman in my church who was demon possessed. When she read the gospel of John, she believed and was immediately relieved from the affliction of the demons.

B. Fight defensively, not offensively.

1. Resist Satan by standing firm in the faith.

**1 Pet. 5:8-9:** *Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil walks about like a roaring lion, seeking whom he may devour.*

9 *Resist him, steadfast in the faith, knowing that the same sufferings are experienced by your brotherhood in the world.*

We are to fight defensively, not offensively. In other words, it is not our job to try to attack Satan and demons. We stand back and resist Satan by standing firm in the faith as Peter tells us. When Satan is roaming around like a lion trying to devour us it says resist him, standing firm in the faith. We don't have the power to attack him. But we have the power when he attacks us to stand in our faith and resist him and he has nothing to do as we are shielded.

2. Stand firm in the faith by using the whole armour of God.

**Eph. 6:13-14, 18:** *Therefore take up the whole armour of God, that you may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Stand therefore, having girded your waist with truth, having put on the breastplate of righteousness, ... praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit,*

We are told in Ephesians 6 that when we are wrestling in the spiritual realm we are to take on the whole armour of God. Paul says stand firm with the belt of truth, with the breastplate of righteousness, and so on... We see in Eph. 6 when we talk about the armour of God, it has to do with what we have been provided with in salvation. The conclusion of that passage; when we put on the whole armour of God, we pray!

3. Exercise the whole armour of God through the Word.

**Matt. 4:3-4:** *The tempter came to him and said, "If you are the Son of God, tell these stones to become bread." Jesus answered, "It is written: "Man shall not live on bread alone, but on every word that comes from the mouth of God."*

We see by the example of Jesus in Matthew 4, when we put on the Armour of God, we are exercising the authority of the Word of God. So, we resist Satan in the same way as we resist the temptations of the flesh. We resist the temptation by allowing our soul/spirit to lead us. We have to realize that not every temptation is from Satan or demons. If I am a glutton because I like food, we cannot blame Satan for that. If I enjoy looking at pornography and imagining this in my mind, you cannot blame Satan for

that. If I love wine so much and continually drink it until I am intoxicated, we cannot blame Satan for that. In all of these things, it could be Satan presenting the opportunity, but we have to take responsibility ourselves that sometimes we enjoy the pleasures of sin, more than obedience to God.

In all of this, whether dealing with Satan and demons or dealing with the flesh or dealing with the soul aspect of our lives, it is all the same; we need to submit to God, we need to take on the armour of God, we need to use the Word of God to help us know we have the victory when temptation comes. Note that all of this is fighting defensively.

C. Talk to God, not to Satan.

**James 5:16b:** *The effective, fervent prayer of a righteous man avails much.*

The key is to talk to God. Don't try to talk to rebuke Satan or demons, go to God. It is amazing what James says: "*The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man accomplishes much.*"

There was a man in our church who was very knowledgeable in the Scriptures; he studied the Bible much. He rarely came to our prayer meeting. One day when visiting him, I said, "I never see you at prayer meeting. Why?" He said, "Well, God is going to do what He is going to do, I don't see the importance of prayer." So I said, "What do you think James 5:16 means then?" (It indicates that prayer accomplishes much.) He just stared at me with alarm. It was like a light opened in his eyes; he never ever understood the importance of prayer in his life before. I reminded him the prayer of Moses that saw God change His mind about destroying the entire nation and using Moses family as the substitute? He then prayed for God to work in his life.

When we see the people in the gospels who bring their children or servants to Jesus because they are demon possessed, they are pleading with Jesus because that is what prayer is. When my father was 70 years old, he was found to have cancer. The medical profession said this cancer is treatable. My father at 70 had a strong heart, he was healthy, so the doctor said you are able to take the chemotherapy which is very strong. These chemicals we think will destroy the cancer, probably a 50% chance. It will take nine months, one treatment each month for this to be successful. In these

nine months you will be very sick, you'll lose your hear, you'll have sores in your mouth and body.

And of course, he began the treatments. But our family and our church prayed fervently, "Lord, it is your will, but we pray you will heal my father of this cancer." And when he had the first treatment, he lost his hair and started to have sores in his mouth. When he had his second treatment, he still had sores but there was nothing more serious than this.

After the second treatment there was a procedure to see if the treatment was working, to see if the tumour was reducing in size. When they looked with their machine to measure the tumour, it was gone after two treatments. My father never had serious sickness, he never lost his appetite, and six months later his hair grew back and it was not grey, it was black. Who healed my father? The chemotherapy or God? Even if he had gone nine months with the chemotherapy I would still say God healed him.

My family prayed for me because I also had cancer, and my cancer was removed by surgery. That happened in 2006. Every year I have to go back and be tested to see if I have cancer. So far the answer has been no cancer is evident.

I was with many people who had surgery with cancer when I was a pastor. They all were in great pain. I never had pain. And God healed me from the surgery, and it was major surgery. But God brought me through the recovery so quickly that I did not miss even one trip to come to Africa to teach. Instead of six months or nine months of recovery I was free to return to service in three months. I say God healed because God's people prayed, the effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man accomplishes very much.

#### D. Reject the unbiblical

**Col. 2:6-10:** *As you have therefore received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk in Him, rooted and built up in Him and established in the faith, as you have been taught, abounding in it with thanksgiving.*

*Beware lest anyone cheat you through philosophy and empty deceit, according to the tradition of men, according to the basic principles of the world, and not according to Christ. For in Him dwells all the fullness of*

*the Godhead bodily; and you are complete in Him, who is the head of all principality and power.*

The last thing we see here is that we, in this spiritual warfare, must reject the unbiblical. In this passage in Colossians we are told we should not be taken captive through philosophy and empty deception. Some of you have given testimony of having fear, but now you should realize there is no need for fear. You have been raised in a culture that is wrapped in lies and deception and fear and therefore you need to realize you are delivered. You need to be like the pastor in Ghana. When he realized that “*He that is in you is greater than he that is in the world*” (1 Jn. 4:4). He went back to challenge the fetish priest by declaring Christ.

When we began our class, I asked you to write in your notes the answer to a very important question: Do the dead people influence the living? Go back and look at your answer. Do uncles come back and tell me what I should do in my life? No. Do the dead come back and possess people in your village to help heal you or help guide you? No. What is the reason for all of these things? The lies and the deception of demons and Satan.

Demons can pretend to be your great-great-grandfather because they lived when he was alive. Demons can have a measure of power to heal a child so you think the fetish priest has done this. Demons even in the limited power God gives them, can take life. Does that mean it was the power of the fetish curse to take that life? No. Even demons are all operating under the sovereign purposes of God.

David, you mentioned your brother died, I’m sorry this happened. But, it was not the power of the fetish priest; it was God allowing the fetish priest to be prominent in your own village for His purposes. The Christian response must be to submit to God, believing His will is best. As a child of God you have the responsibility in your family and the village to declare the truth that this hardship was not the fetish priest but the authority of Satan in the world of unbelievers.

That is the state of false religions, they lie, they deceive, they destroy. But, they cannot do anything outside the will of God. So, we accept such

hardship as the will of God, and we challenge the people who put their trust in the fetish priests who are under the influence of Satan and his host. They put their trust in demons, not God. Their end is eternal suffering.

This concludes our notes. We have time for your questions.

*Student Question:* *I have a problem with Matthew 12.*

*Let's go back to Matthew 12. The story about the one who went out and got more, the condition of the man was worse. The person was delivered, how come the spirit went back again? -*

*Prof. Response:* *Jesus is using that as an illustration to show that if he is healed, this will not happen. This is not a real situation, Jesus is explaining the consequences if He was under the power of Beelzebub when He does His miracles. What are the verses you are referring to?*

*Student Response:* *Matt. 12:43-45*

*Prof. Response:* *We need to go back to vs. 38 which defines the context. Read vs. 38 all the way down to vs. 45.*

*Student Response:* *(Student reads text.)*

*Prof. Response:* *The context is the scribes and Pharisees wanted a sign. So Jesus says, "You are a wicked generation seeking a sign rather than just believing." He mentions that the signs will be His death and resurrection in threedays, even as Jonah was in the belly of the whale. Then He rebukes them for their unbelief by saying that the men of Nineveh, which would be the enemies of Israel, they repented. The Queen of the South, another enemy, came to see Solomon and recognized the greatness of Solomon's God." Then He uses in 43-45, an illustration of an individual where the demon left. It doesn't say he was cast out. Jesus is using this as an illustration of Israel; an unclean spirit leaves to go to another place, and he returns to find the house all clean.*

*Jesus is comparing this individual who was delivered from demons to Israel in its deliverance and return to wickedness. He is referring to Israel's repeated OT deliverance and obedience to God, and return to disobedience and compromise and the work of the Pharisees to bring a superficial righteousness.*

*Did the Pharisees have the respect of the people as righteous people? Yes. They saw the Pharisees as righteous people, as the spiritual leaders. So they attempted to follow the Pharisaical in their legalism to clean the house of Israel up. But did their Pharisee teaching really clean the Israelites? No. When a demon see the house superficially clean, he gets other demon to exercise greater power over them. Then He says, "This is the way it is going to be with this generation"*

*In essence Jesus is saying: "You have rejected me, the real answer. You have not believed that I am the Son of God and the Messiah, so though your house may look clean now because of the teaching of the Pharisees, it will experience double empowerment by Satan's influence. Okay? Does that help you see the context, Phillip? He is not talking about a real person. He is talking about Israel saying: You think you are clean, but you are not.*

*Student Question: James 5:14 says, "If anyone is sick, come to the elders and they will pray for him." When the person is sick and calls the elder, they must come with oil. Can you explain?*

*Prof. Response: First of all we must understand that James is one of the very earliest epistles in the NT. So in this context there were still apostles and still the sign gifts in place to confirm the message. So, they are told in the area of sickness, you come to the elders of a church and they will pray for you. It is a matter of coming and seeking help of the people to pray.*

*When did Israel anoint people with oil?*

*Student Response: When they select a king.*

*Prof. Response: Who else?*

*Student Response: Priests were anointed.*

*Prof. Response: Who else?*

*Student Response: Prophets were anointed in the OT .*

*Prof. Response: What was the purpose of the anointing? What did it show the people when they were anointed?*

*Student Response: To confirm the choice.*

*Prof. Response: Yes, it was a symbol of them being set apart by God for a particular purpose. In the early church where we are in James, there is*



*still a carry-over of the practices of the Israel nation. In the early church most of the believers were Jewish. That's the time that James is writing.*

*I see this as a carry-over of a practice that shows a symbol, a sign that individuals are called for a unique purpose. The anointing with oil is not anything that delivers a guaranteed of healing, it is just an affirmation to say that as we pray we see that this man has a unique purpose of God in his life. The only other time we see anointing in the NT is with the Good Samaritan. In the story of Jesus, a man was anointed with to heal him, because it was the medicine of the day.*

*So this could be another way of interpreting the idea of the anointing of the oil. It could be just the medicine in that day. That's the way some interpret it. I personally think it has more to do with the OT anointing to establish a purpose of God for this. We have to understand that the oil has nothing to do with guaranteeing healing, that's not what it is about. The focus here is prayer. Then it says, "the prayer of faith." The term has the article in it in the Greek, "**the**" prayer of faith, which suggests that this is a unique expression of faith because the article is used, and the article always defines something unique in Greek.*

*We see this when Jesus said in John "I am **the** way, **the** truth, **the** life." The article there says "This is unique; it is the only way." So it could be that in the early church, "the prayer of faith," suggests that it was a movement of God to bring a healing. In the early church, before Scriptures were completed, there were sign gifts. Nevertheless, the point is the prayer of faith will save the sick and the Lord will raise him up. The text goes on to say that if the sickness was caused by sin, the prayer and going to the disciples or the church leadership, of course was an expression of repentance and he would be forgiven.*

*I think what we learn from this is that people who are sick should solicit prayer. In my church I had a situation where two ladies had cancer, and when I visited them, they asked if I would have a meeting with the church where they were anointed with oil and we prayed for them. So I asked them, "Do you believe that if we do this, God will heal you." They*

said, “No we believe that healing or no healing is the will of God, but we see in Scriptures that this is what the church did.”

*So they had the correct attitude and the proper understanding: this public ceremony it is not a guarantee for healing. So at one of our prayer meetings, I explained what they had asked for and said we will do what it says in James, and we would not deny them this. I explained in the text the oil is a symbol of God’s special separation, a special work he has for these individuals. And the prayer of faith mentioned here is specifically an expression of faith of the miracles the apostles did when they were alive. We want to support these ladies in their sickness and confirm God has a purpose and confirm that God will do His will.*

*I poured olive oil over their heads, then the elders of the church as well as the deacons laid their hands over them, and we prayed that God would have His will. We asked that He would heal them because we had the right to ask. The church was blessed when we did this. They saw the passion we had in our prayer for these people, and it was a good time to unite our church. Within the next year, one of the ladies was healed and the other lady died. Did our prayer fail? No. We prayed, “Thy will be done.” We said the symbol of anointing was to acknowledge that God has a unique purpose for this and we want to surrender to that purpose. Does that help you understand?*

*Student Question:* *Jesus healed a lot of people, mostly by the word of His mouth; to the blind person He said, “Go and you are healed.” But on one occasion He spit and rubbed it on the eyes. The spit. Can you explain this? Was it a symbol?*

*Prof. Response:* *I don’t think it was a symbol, I think Jesus was doing something unique in that individual’s life. The way this individual was healed was step by step. When first he looked, he could not see clearly. And then he could see perfectly. Why did God heal him this way? I don’t know. God can choose to heal any way He wishes. We see Him speaking to and not even going to the home of Jarius’ daughter, and she was healed. We see Him reaching out and touching the leper when that was forbidden; no one touched a leper. We see Him making mud from His spit*

*and progressive healing. My only answer is; Jesus knew the people who were there, He knew these individuals and used a method that would be the best way to convince them He was the Son of God. I think it is in our pneumatology class that I talk about the gift of healings more, because today we have people who say, "God will heal you if you have enough faith." But the gift of healing is not people going around healing. It is not "the gift of healing" singular, but "the gift of healings," plural. This indicates that each healing is a specific act, ministered in the power supplied for one situation at a time. To me that coincides with the term "the prayer of faith," during the early church signs and wonders.*

*When you study Jesus' healings, you'll find out there are many different expressions of faith. When the woman reached out and touched Jesus, it was "her faith." When the four men lowered their friend through the roof, he was healed because of "their faith." At the pool of Bethesda, no one had faith, Jesus just healed the man. I think Jesus used many different ways and many different circumstances so we would not fall into the trap of saying, "If you follow these specific steps, then you will be healed." When we read Scriptures and see Jesus healed in many different ways; some with faith, some without faith, the purpose is clear. He has all power, therefore, He is the Son of God.*

*Can you imagine if Jesus healed every blind man by making mud? What people would be doing today? They would say, "Ah, we have a formula for healing everyone who is blind. We have to make mud. We can't use water, no, no, we must spit. The spit must come from a holy man who knows God. We must apply it three times." That's what we would see the people doing.*

*Do you know what would happen? The fetish priest would do this and the demons would heal the man and so everyone would believe this is true, this is the way. The demon would achieve the purpose. Take the focus away from the power of Jesus and make the people look at the man. Isn't that the way the fetish, the spirit worship works? The man becomes the focus.*

*Any other comments or testimonies?*

Student Response: There is a site called “Balimba” in the Chad and there is another site, one “dans la magique.” This place is well-known for the demons, the spirits. When the first missionary came everybody said, “You can’t dare to go over there,” and the missionary said, “Well, we are going,” and the missionary went and nothing happened to them. The people cannot believe why they lived. They kept asking, “Why haven’t they been killed?” And at the second site, the same thing, when you walk, everybody have to walk. But one man went with a machete to clean up the place and build a church and they have a church over there, so this is the power of Jesus. This is his testimony.

Prof. Response: Tell the students this story of the missionary went, and started at the village and went around and finally came to the witches. This is a story with a good lesson. When you go into your ministry, even the fetish priest, even the witch doctor needs to hear the message. You in the village may be the only chance they have to hear the message. Did Christ die for these witch doctors? Yes, so don’t fear, be bold.

Student Response: During this past vacation, in the summertime, one of the students who is now a student here, his wife came and see the pastor and said there are some things, there is a lot of money on the street. He saw it, it was bills everywhere and the wind was blowing it, the money everywhere. He saw the money and nobody dared touch the money. The Pastor said, “Thank you Jesus. I needed money and you give it.” He went down and he collected it and it is about \$300. There was a lot of money.

Prof. Response: We all have I’m sure, interesting stories. Because the reality is that there is a spiritual world. Sister Sylvia was telling me yesterday about an angel who helped her in a situation. A man helped her and when she turned to thank him, he was gone and there was no space where he could run away. Is it possible for it to have been an angel? Absolutely.

So we learn that there is a Satanic world. Yes, it is the place where Satan and demons carry on their evil activities. But the people of God are not bound in that world. “He that is in us, is greater than he that is in this world.” And God Himself has a host of His angels that He uses to guard us and protect us as well as His own power. This is the believer’s true

*world where we live and serve God. So be confident! Serve God knowing we have no fear from Satan. But the people around us are in bondage and they need to hear the truth. The answer is not rebuking but sharing the answer in Christ.*

*Will you pray for these men?*

## APPENDIX A

(The Angelology Study guide can be downloaded from:  
<http://www.discipleshipministries.ca/>. You can study it, copy it, use it in  
whatever way you wish.)

### **COURSE SYLLABUS**

#### **Course Description**

A study familiarizing the student with the Bible doctrines of Angelology, Satanology and Demonology with particular attention given to “Demons and the Christian.”

#### **Course Requirements**

1. Complete the Pre-Course Study Guide.

2. Attend every class and participate in class discussions.

3. Memorize the following passages of Scripture:

Ps 103:20 "Bless the LORD, you His angels, Who excel in strength, who do His word, Heeding the voice of His word."

Heb. 1:14 "Are they not all ministering spirits sent forth to minister for those who will inherit salvation?"

Matt. 10:28 "And do not fear those who kill the body but cannot kill the soul. But rather fear Him who is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.

1 John 4:4 "You are of God, little children, and have overcome them, because He who is in you is greater than he who is in the world."

James 4:7 "Therefore submit to God. Resist the devil and he will flee from you."

4. Successfully complete the three tests for the study.

5. Read 100 pages from Bible commentaries or Christian books relating specifically to any of these topics, angels, Satan, demons, spirit worship etc. and submit a book report on your readings.

6. Submit a confession ("What I believe") statement of one or two paragraphs on each of these doctrines, angels, Satan, and demons.

#### **Course Marking Scheme**

Pre-Course Study 50

Attendance and class participation	30
Memory Work	30
Tests	30
Reading	30
Confessions	30
Total	200

**Grade Scheme:** A = 180 - 200

B = 160 - 179

C = 140 - 159

D = 120 - 139

F = below 119

Assignments must be mailed (post marked) no later than

---

Late assignments will be reduced 1 grade letter. (Example a “B” will be reduced to a “C.”)



Earl has 25 years of pastoral experience in Ontario, Canada. He received a Ph.D. degree in Biblical Studies from Pensacola Christian College. During his 25 years of pastoral ministry Earl was involved as a chaplain at the

Muskoka Centre, was administrator and instructor for the London Baptist Bible College Satellite Campus, and became the founding president of A Word in Season Ministries, a devotional newspaper column and radio ministry. In 2003 Earl joined ABWE Canada as a missionary professor of theology where his responsibilities include writing college and seminary curriculum, and teaching these courses in developing countries throughout the world.

Along with serving the Lord and enjoying his family, Earl's favourite pastime is canoeing and fishing the lakes of beautiful Muskoka, Ontario, Canada, where he and his wife Kathi reside.

